

Appendix C

Site-Specific Coding Modules

Table of Contents

| | |
|---|-------|
| Site-Specific Coding Modules | C-1 |
| Lip, Upper..... | C-3 |
| Lip, Lower..... | C-11 |
| Other Lip..... | C-19 |
| Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil..... | C-29 |
| Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS..... | C-37 |
| Gum, Upper..... | C-47 |
| Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area Retromolar Gingiva (Trigone)..... | C-55 |
| Gum, NOS..... | C-63 |
| Floor of Mouth..... | C-71 |
| Hard Palate..... | C-83 |
| Soft Palate, Uvula..... | C-91 |
| Other Mouth..... | C-101 |
| Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule..... | C-109 |
| Parotid Gland..... | C-119 |
| Submandibular Gland..... | C-127 |
| Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands..... | C-135 |
| Tonsil, Oropharynx..... | C-145 |
| Anterior Surface of Epiglottis..... | C-155 |
| Nasopharynx..... | C-165 |
| Pyriiform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx..... | C-173 |
| Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites..... | C-181 |
| Esophagus..... | C-193 |
| Small Intestine..... | C-211 |
| Colon..... | C-219 |
| Rectosigmoid, Rectum..... | C-231 |
| Anus Anal Canal; Anus, NOS; Other Parts of Rectum..... | C-239 |
| Liver and Intrahepatic Bile Ducts..... | C-249 |
| Extrahepatic Bile Duct(s)..... | C-261 |
| Ampulla of Vater..... | C-265 |
| Other Biliary and Biliary, NOS..... | C-269 |
| Pancreas: Head..... | C-275 |
| Pancreas: Body and Tail..... | C-281 |
| Pancreas: Other and Unspecified..... | C-287 |
| Other and Ill-Defined Digestive Organs..... | C-291 |
| Nasal Cavity..... | C-299 |
| Middle Ear..... | C-307 |
| Maxillary Sinus..... | C-317 |
| Ethmoid Sinus..... | C-325 |
| Accessory (Paranasal) Sinuses..... | C-333 |
| Glottic Larynx..... | C-343 |
| Supraglottic Larynx..... | C-351 |
| Subglottic Larynx..... | C-359 |
| Larynx..... | C-367 |
| Trachea..... | C-377 |
| Lung..... | C-383 |
| Heart, Mediastinum..... | C-395 |
| Pleura..... | C-399 |
| Other and Ill-Defined Respiratory Sites and Intrathoracic Organs..... | C-405 |
| Bone..... | C-411 |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|---|-------|
| Skin | C-419 |
| Skin of Eyelid | C-425 |
| Malignant Melanoma of Skin, Vulva, Penis, Scrotum..... | C-431 |
| Mycosis Fungoides and Sezary Disease of Skin, Vulva, Penis, Scrotum..... | C-443 |
| Peripheral Nerves and Autonomic Nervous System; Connective, Subcutaneous, and Other Soft Tissues | C-455 |
| Retroperitoneum and Peritoneum | C-461 |
| Breast | C-469 |
| Vulva..... | C-487 |
| Vagina..... | C-491 |
| Cervix Uteri | C-497 |
| Corpus Uteri; Uterus, Nos (Excluding Placenta | C-505 |
| Ovary | C-513 |
| Fallopian Tube | C-521 |
| Broad and Round Ligaments, Parametrium, Uterine Adnexa..... | C-527 |
| Other and Unspecified Female Genital Organs | C-533 |
| Placenta..... | C-537 |
| Penis..... | C-545 |
| Prostate..... | C-551 |
| Testis | C-565 |
| Other and Unspecified Male Genital Organs..... | C-571 |
| Scrotum..... | C-575 |
| Kidney, Renal Pelvis, and Ureter..... | C-583 |
| Bladder..... | C-595 |
| Urethra | C-609 |
| Paraurethral Gland, Overlapping Lesion of Urinary Organs, and Unspecified Urinary Organs..... | C-613 |
| Conjunctiva..... | C-619 |
| Malignant Melanoma of Conjunctiva | C-619 |
| Cornea, Retina, Choroid, Ciliary Body Iris, Lens, Sclera, Uveal Tract), Eyeball, Overlapping and Other Eye [Excluding Melanoma and Retinoblastoma]..... | C-627 |
| Malignant Melanoma of Iris and Ciliary Body | C-631 |
| Malignant Melanoma of Choroid..... | C-637 |
| Malignant Melanoma of Other Eye | C-641 |
| Lacrimal Gland | C-645 |
| Orbit..... | C-649 |
| Retinoblastoma | C-653 |
| Brain [and Other Parts of Central Nervous System]..... | C-661 |
| Brain and Cerebral Meninges | C-663 |
| Other Parts of Central Nervous System | C-669 |
| Thyroid Gland..... | C-675 |
| Thymus, Adrenal (Suprarenal) Gland, and Other Endocrine Glands | C-683 |
| Kaposi Sarcoma of All Sites | C-691 |
| Lymph Nodes..... | C-699 |
| Hodgkin and Non-Hodgkin Lymphomas of All Sites (Excl. Mycosis Fungoides and Sezary Disease) | C-701 |
| Hematopoietic, Reticuloendothelial, Immunoproliferative, and Myeloproliferative Neoplasms | C-709 |

Appendix C

Site-Specific Coding Modules

The site-specific coding modules are stand-alone coding manuals that include SEER Coding Guidelines, Collaborative Staging Coding Instructions and Surgery of Primary Site codes. In the past, site-specific instructions were scattered throughout the SEER Program Code Manual. Collaborative Staging and Surgery codes were in two separate manuals. As part of the SEER commitment to continuing Quality Improvement, this appendix brings together the site-specific instructions needed to abstract a case, facilitating efficiency and accuracy. General instructions in the main manual are applicable in the absence of site-specific instructions. All modules include collaborative staging and surgery codes. Some modules include site-specific coding guidelines in addition to the collaborative staging and surgery codes. The goal is to have complete stand-alone modules for every anatomic site. SEER will continue to work toward this goal by enhancing site-specific guidelines as modules are expanded and revised.

The site-specific coding guidelines contain instructions for various data items other than collaborative stage and surgery of primary site. The Guidelines are a collaborative effort between NCI/SEER and the SEER Quality Control staff from the SEER registries. We gratefully acknowledge the valuable input provided by the SEER QC staff.

Part II of the Collaborative Staging manual is included in this appendix. For an introduction to Collaborative Staging, see Part I of the Collaborative Staging Manual and Coding Instructions, version 1.0.

The surgery codes are based on the American College of Surgeons Commission on Cancer's *Facility Oncology Registry Data System*, American College of Surgeons, Chicago, IL, 2004 (FORDS), Appendix B: Site-specific Surgery Codes (Revised 2004). The surgery codes in this document are identical to the FORDS manual; only formatting and annotations may vary. The **SEER Notes** that appear in the Surgery Code sections contain information or instructions not found in FORDS or that are different from FORDS.

Page left blank

Collaborative Staging Codes

Lip, Upper

Lip (Vermilion or Labial Mucosa)

C00.0, C00.3

C00.0 External upper lip

C00.3 Mucosa of upper lip

Note: AJCC includes labial mucosa (C00.3) with buccal mucosa (C06.0)

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval</p> | <p>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</p> | <p>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table</p> |
|---|--|--|

Lip, Upper

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Lip, Upper

CS Extension

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor confined to: Labial mucosa (inner lip) Lamina propria Multiple foci Submucosa (superficial invasion) Vermilion surface Superficial extension to: Skin of lip Subcutaneous soft tissue of lip | * | L | L |
| 20 | Musculature | * | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS | * | L | L |
| 50 | Buccal mucosa (inner cheek) Commissure Opposite (both) lip(s) | * | RE | RE |
| 51 | Gingiva | * | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|----|----|----|
| 70 | Maxilla | T4 | RE | RE |
| 74 | Upper lip/commissure: Nose | T4 | RE | D |
| 75 | Tongue | T4 | D | D |
| 76 | Skin of face/neck | T4 | D | D |
| 77 | Cortical bone (other than code 70) Floor of mouth Inferior alveolar nerve | T4 | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension | T4 | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

*For Extension codes 10, 20, 30, 50, and 51 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Lip, Upper

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Lip, Upper

CS Lymph Nodes

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|-------------|--|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Other groups Facial Buccinator (buccal) Nasolabial Parotid Infra-auricular Intraparotid Periparotid Preauricular Regional lymph node, NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 11 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) | * | D | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|---------------|--|-----|----|----|
| 11, cont'd | <p>Submental Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS</p> | | | |
| 12 | <p>Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Parapharyngeal Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4)</p> | * | D | D |
| 18 | Stated as N1, no other information | N1 | RN | RN |
| 19 | Stated as N2a, no other information | N2a | RN | RN |
| 20 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10 | * | RN | RN |
| 21 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11 | * | D | RN |
| 22 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12 | * | D | D |
| 29 | Stated as N2b, no other information | N2b | RN | RN |
| 30 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 31 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | RN |
| 32 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|-------|----|----|
| 40 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | RN | RN |
| 41 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | RN |
| 42 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | D |
| 49 | Stated as N2c, no other information | N2c | RN | RN |
| 50 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s) not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 51 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive node(s) not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | RN |
| 52 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 60 | Stated as N2, NOS | N2NOS | RN | RN |
| 70 | Stated as N3, no other information | N3 | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information | * | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Lip, Upper
CS Reg Nodes Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Lip, Upper
Reg LN Pos
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Lip, Upper
Reg LN Exam
SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Lip, Upper
CS Mets at DX**

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|-------------|---|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Supraclavicular (transverse cervical) Distant lymph node(s), NOS | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

**Lip, Upper
CS Mets Eval**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Lip, Upper
CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes**

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description |
|-------------|--|
| 000 | No involved regional nodes |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters) |
| 989 | 989 millimeters or larger |
| 990 | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |
| 991 | Described as less than 1 cm |
| 992 | Described as less than 2 cm |
| 993 | Described as less than 3 cm |
| 994 | Described as less than 4 cm |
| 995 | Described as less than 5 cm |
| 996 | Described as less than 6 cm |
| 997 | Described as more than 6 cm |
| 999 | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record |

Lip, Upper

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description |
|-------------|---|
| 000 | No extracapsular extension |
| 001 | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically |
| 005 | Extracapsular extension present pathologically |
| 888 | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Lip, Upper

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|-------------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100 | Level I lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level II lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Level III lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level I and II lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level I and III lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Level II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Lip, Upper

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100 | Level IV lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level V lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 110 | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 011 | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 111 | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Lip, Upper

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100 | Level VI lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level VII lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 011 | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|---|
| 111 | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Lip, Upper

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100 | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Collaborative Staging Codes

Lip, Lower

Lip (Vermilion or Labial Mucosa)

C00.1, C00.4, C00.6

C00.1 External lower lip

C00.4 Mucosa of lower lip

C00.6 Commissure of lip

Note: AJCC includes labial mucosa (C00.4) with buccal mucosa (C06.0)

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| <p>CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval</p> | <p>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</p> | <p>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table</p> |
|---|---|--|

Lip, Lower

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Lip, Lower

CS Extension

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor confined to: Labial mucosa (inner lip) Lamina propria Multiple foci Submucosa (superficial invasion) Vermilion surface Superficial extension to: Skin of lip Subcutaneous soft tissue of lip | * | L | L |
| 20 | Musculature | * | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS | * | L | L |
| 50 | Buccal mucosa (inner cheek) Commissure Opposite (both) lip(s) | * | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|----|----|----|
| 51 | Gingiva | * | RE | RE |
| 70 | Mandible | T4 | RE | RE |
| 74 | Nose | T4 | RE | D |
| 75 | Tongue | T4 | D | D |
| 76 | Skin of face/neck | T4 | D | D |
| 77 | Cortical bone (other than code 70) Floor of mouth Inferior alveolar nerve | T4 | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension | T4 | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

*For Extension codes 10, 20, 30, 50, and 51 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Lip, Lower

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Lip, Lower

CS Lymph Nodes

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Other groups Facial: Mandibular Regional lymph node, NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 11 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level II node Upper deep cervical Upper jugular | * | D | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|---------------|--|-----|----|----|
| 11, cont'd | <p>Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid-jugular</p> <p>Level IV node Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Lower deep cervical Lower jugular</p> <p>Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS</p> | | | |
| 12 | <p>Single positive ipsilateral regional node:</p> <p>Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes)</p> <p>Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal</p> <p>Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX)</p> <p>Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital</p> <p>Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4)</p> | * | D | D |
| 18 | Stated as N1, no other information | N1 | RN | RN |
| 19 | Stated as N2a, no other information | N2a | RN | RN |
| 20 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10 | * | RN | RN |
| 21 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11 | * | D | RN |
| 22 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12 | * | D | D |
| 29 | Stated as N2b, no other information | N2b | RN | RN |
| 30 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 31 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | RN |
| 32 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 40 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | RN | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|-------|----|----|
| 41 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | RN |
| 42 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | D |
| 49 | Stated as N2c, no other information | N2c | RN | RN |
| 50 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s) not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 51 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive node(s) not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | RN |
| 52 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 60 | Stated as N2, NOS | N2NOS | RN | RN |
| 70 | Stated as N3, no other information | N3 | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information | * | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

**Lip, Lower
CS Reg Nodes Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Lip, Lower
Reg LN Pos
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Lip, Lower
Reg LN Exam
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Lip, Lower
CS Mets at DX**

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Supraclavicular (transverse cervical) Distant lymph node(s), NOS | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

**Lip, Lower
CS Mets Eval**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Lip, Lower
CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes**

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description |
|---------|--|
| 000 | No involved regional nodes |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters) |
| 989 | 989 millimeters or larger |
| 990 | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |
| 991 | Described as less than 1 cm |
| 992 | Described as less than 2 cm |
| 993 | Described as less than 3 cm |
| 994 | Described as less than 4 cm |
| 995 | Described as less than 5 cm |
| 996 | Described as less than 6 cm |
| 997 | Described as more than 6 cm |
| 999 | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record |

Lip, Lower

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), “Imaging studies showing amorphous uccinator margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease.”

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No extracapsular extension |
| 001 | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as “fixed”, not assessed pathologically |
| 005 | Extracapsular extension present pathologically |
| 888 | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Lip, Lower

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100 | Level I lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level II lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Level III lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level I and II lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level I and III lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Level II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Lip, Lower

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100 | Level IV lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level V lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 110 | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 011 | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 111 | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Lip, Lower

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100 | Level VI lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level VII lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Facial (buccinators, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level VI and facial (buccinators, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 011 | Level VII and facial (buccinators, nasolabial) nodes involved |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|---|
| 111 | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Lip, Lower

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100 | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Collaborative Staging Codes

Other Lip

Lip (Vermilion or Labial Mucosa)

C00.2, C00.5, C00.8-C00.9

C00.2 External lip, NOS

C00.5 Mucosa of lip, NOS

C00.8 Overlapping lesion of lip

C00.9 Lip, NOS (excludes skin of lip C44.0)

Note: AJCC includes labial mucosa (C00.5) with buccal mucosa (C06.0)

| | | |
|-------------------|--|---|
| CS Tumor Size | CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes | The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table |
| CS Extension | CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| CS Lymph Nodes | CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| Reg LN Pos | CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| Reg LN Exam | | |
| CS Mets at DX | | |
| CS Mets Eval | | |

Other Lip

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Lip

CS Extension

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor confined to: Labial mucosa (inner lip) Lamina propria Multiple foci Submucosa (superficial invasion) Vermilion surface Superficial extension to: Skin of lip Subcutaneous soft tissue of lip | * | L | L |
| 20 | Musculature | * | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS | * | L | L |
| 50 | Buccal mucosa (inner cheek) Commissure Opposite (both) lip(s) | * | RE | RE |
| 51 | Gingiva | * | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|----|---|---|
| 75 | Tongue | T4 | D | D |
| 76 | Skin of face/neck | T4 | D | D |
| 77 | Cortical bone Floor of mouth Inferior alveolar nerve | T4 | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension | T4 | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

*For Extension codes 10, 20, 30, 50, and 51 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Other Lip

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Lip

CS Lymph Nodes

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Regional lymph node, NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 11 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS | * | D | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|-----|----|----|
| 12 | <p>Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4</p> | * | D | D |
| 18 | Stated as N1, no other information | N1 | RN | RN |
| 19 | Stated as N2a, no other information | N2a | RN | RN |
| 20 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10 | * | RN | RN |
| 21 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11 | * | D | RN |
| 22 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12 | * | D | D |
| 29 | Stated as N2b, no other information | N2b | RN | RN |
| 30 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 31 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | RN |
| 32 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 40 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | RN | RN |
| 41 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | RN |
| 42 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | D |
| 49 | Stated as N2c, no other information | N2c | RN | RN |
| 50 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s) not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|-------|----|----|
| 51 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive node(s) not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | RN |
| 52 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 60 | Stated as N2, NOS | N2NOS | RN | RN |
| 70 | Stated as N3, no other information | N3 | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information | * | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Other Lip
CS Reg Nodes Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Lip
Reg LN Pos
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Lip
Reg LN Exam
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Lip
CS Mets at DX

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Supraclavicular (transverse cervical) Distant lymph node(s), NOS | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

Other Lip

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Lip

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description |
|---------|--|
| 000 | No involved regional nodes |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters) |
| 989 | 989 millimeters or larger |
| 990 | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |
| 991 | Described as less than 1 cm |
| 992 | Described as less than 2 cm |
| 993 | Described as less than 3 cm |
| 994 | Described as less than 4 cm |
| 995 | Described as less than 5 cm |
| 996 | Described as less than 6 cm |
| 997 | Described as more than 6 cm |
| 999 | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record |

Other Lip

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No extracapsular extension |
| 001 | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically |
| 005 | Extracapsular extension present pathologically |
| 888 | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Other Lip

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100 | Level I lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level II lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Level III lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level I and II lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level I and III lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Level II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Other Lip

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|--|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100 | Level IV lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level V lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 110 | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 011 | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 111 | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved |

| | |
|-----|---|
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |
|-----|---|

Other Lip

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100 | Level VI lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level VII lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 011 | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 111 | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Other Lip

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100 | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Site-Specific Surgery Codes

Oral Cavity

Lip C000–C009, Base of Tongue C019, Other Parts of Tongue C020–C029,
Gum C030–C039, Floor of Mouth C040–C049, Palate C050–C059,
Other Parts of Mouth C060–C069
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)

Codes

00 None; **no surgery** of primary site; **autopsy ONLY**

- 10 Local tumor destruction, NOS
- 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
- 13 Cryosurgery
- 14 Laser

No specimen sent to **pathology** from surgical events 10–14

20 **Local tumor excision**, NOS

- 26 Polypectomy
- 27 Excisional biopsy

Any **combination** of 20 or 26–27 WITH

- 21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 22 Electrocautery
- 23 Cryosurgery
- 24 Laser ablation
- 25 Laser excision

[**SEER Note:** Codes 21 to 25 above combine 20 Local tumor excision, 26 Polypectomy or 27 Excisional biopsy with 21 PDT, 22 Electrocautery, 23 Cryosurgery, 24 Laser ablation or 25 Laser excision]

Specimen sent to **pathology** from surgical events 20–27

[**SEER Note:** Codes 20-27 include shave and wedge resection]

30 Wide excision, NOS

Code 30 includes:

- Hemiglossectomy
- Partial glossectomy

40 **Radical excision** of tumor, NOS

- 41 **Radical excision of tumor ONLY**
- 42 **Combination of 41 WITH resection in continuity with mandible (marginal, segmental, hemi-, or total resection)**
- 43 **Combination of 41 WITH resection in continuity with maxilla (partial, subtotal, or total resection)**

[**SEER Note:** In continuity with or “en bloc” means that all of the tissues were removed during the same procedure, but not necessarily in a single specimen]

Codes 40–43 include:

- Total glossectomy
- Radical glossectomy

90 Surgery, NOS

99 **Unknown** if surgery performed; **death certificate ONLY**

Page left blank

Collaborative Staging Codes

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

C01.9, C02.4

C01.9 Base of tongue, NOS

C02.4 Lingual tonsil

Note: AJCC includes base of tongue (C01.9) with oropharynx (C10._).

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval</p> | <p>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</p> | <p>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table</p> |
|---|--|--|

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

CS Extension

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor on one side confined to posterior 1/3 of tongue: Lamina propria Submucosa | * | L | L |
| 20 | Musculature, intrinsic or NOS | * | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS Midline tumor | * | L | L |
| 40 | Tumor crosses midline | * | L | L |
| 50 | Anterior 2/3 of tongue for base of tongue Base of tongue for lingual tonsil Floor of mouth Lower gingiva | * | RE | RE |
| 53 | Sublingual gland | * | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|--|-----|----|----|
| 60 | Epiglottis, lingual (pharyngeal) surface Glossoepiglottic fold Glossopharyngeal fold Lateral pharyngeal wall Pharyngoepiglottic fold Tonsillar pillars and fossae Tonsils Vallecula | * | RE | RE |
| 62 | Soft palate, inferior surface or NOS | * | D | RE |
| 71 | Mandible for lingual tonsil | T4a | RE | D |
| 72 | Mandible for base of tongue | T4a | D | D |
| 74 | Medial pterygoid Hard palate | T4a | D | D |
| 75 | Musculature, extrinsic: Genioglossus Geniohyoid Hyoglossus Mylohyoid Palatoglossus Styloglossus | T4a | D | D |
| 77 | Larynx | T4a | D | D |
| 78 | Skin | T4b | D | D |
| 80 | Contiguous extension to: Base of skull Carotid artery Hypopharynx Lateral nasopharynx Lateral pterygoid muscle Pterygoid plates Uvula | T4b | D | D |
| 82 | Further contiguous extension | T4b | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

*For Extension codes 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 53, 60, and 62 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil
CS TS/Ext-Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

CS Lymph Nodes

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Sublingual Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular, NOS Regional lymph node, NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 12 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) | * | D | D |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|---------------|---|-------|----|----|
| 12, Cont'd | Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS | | | |
| 18 | Stated as N1, no other information | N1 | RN | RN |
| 19 | Stated as N2a, no other information | N2a | RN | RN |
| 20 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10 | * | RN | RN |
| 22 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12 | * | D | D |
| 29 | Stated as N2b, no other information | N2b | RN | RN |
| 30 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 32 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 40 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | RN | RN |
| 42 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | D |
| 49 | Stated as N2c, no other information | N2c | RN | RN |
| 50 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 52 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 60 | Stated as N2, NOS | N2NOS | RN | RN |
| 70 | Stated as N3, no other information | N3 | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

*For codes 10, 12, 20, 22, 30, 32, 40, 42, 49, 50, 52 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

CS Mets at DX

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Supraclavicular (transverse cervical) Distant lymph node(s), NOS | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description |
|---------|--|
| 000 | No involved regional nodes |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters) |
| 989 | 989 millimeters or larger |
| 990 | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |
| 991 | Described as less than 1 cm |
| 992 | Described as less than 2 cm |
| 993 | Described as less than 3 cm |
| 994 | Described as less than 4 cm |
| 995 | Described as less than 5 cm |
| 996 | Described as less than 6 cm |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|--|
| 997 | Described as more than 6 cm |
| 999 | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record |

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No extracapsular extension |
| 001 | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically |
| 005 | Extracapsular extension present pathologically |
| 888 | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100 | Level I lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level II lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Level III lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level I and II lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level I and III lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Level II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|---|
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |
|-----|---|

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100 | Level IV lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level V lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 110 | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 011 | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 111 | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100 | Level VI lymph node(s) involved |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|---|
| 010 | Level VII lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 011 | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 111 | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100 | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Collaborative Staging Codes

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS

C02.0-C02.3, C02.8-C02.9

- C02.0 Dorsal surface of tongue, NOS
- C02.1 Border of tongue
- C02.2 Ventral surface of tongue, NOS
- C02.3 Anterior 2/3 of tongue, NOS
- C02.8 Overlapping lesion of tongue
- C02.9 Tongue, NOS

| | | |
|--|--|---|
| CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table |
|--|--|---|

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS

CS Extension

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor on one side confined to: Lamina propria Submucosa | * | L | L |
| 20 | Musculature, intrinsic or NOS | * | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS Midline tumor | * | L | L |
| 40 | Tumor crosses midline | * | L | L |
| 50 | Base of tongue Floor of mouth Gingiva, lower Retromolar trigone | * | RE | RE |
| 53 | Sublingual gland | * | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|-----|----|----|
| 60 | Lateral pharyngeal wall Soft palate, inferior surface Tonsillar pillars and fossae Tonsils | * | D | RE |
| 70 | Mandible | T4a | RE | D |
| 72 | (60) + (70) | T4a | D | D |
| 74 | Maxilla Maxillary sinus | T4a | D | D |
| 75 | Musculature, extrinsic: Genioglossus Geniohyoid Hyoglossus Mylohyoid Palatoglossus Styloglossus | T4a | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension | T4b | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

*For codes 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 53, and 60 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS

CS Lymph Nodes

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Sublingual Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental | * | RN | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|---------------|--|-----|----|----|
| 10, cont'd | <p>Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular</p> <p>Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular</p> <p>Level IV node Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Lower deep cervical Lower jugular</p> <p>Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular, NOS Regional lymph node, NOS</p> | | | |
| 12 | <p>Single positive ipsilateral regional node:</p> <p>Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes)</p> <p>Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal</p> <p>Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX)</p> <p>Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4)</p> | * | D | D |
| 18 | Stated as N1, no other information | N1 | RN | RN |
| 19 | Stated as N2a, no other information | N2a | RN | RN |
| 20 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10 | * | RN | RN |
| 22 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12 | * | D | D |
| 29 | Stated as N2b, no other information | N2b | RN | RN |
| 30 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 32 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 40 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | RN | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|-------|----|----|
| 42 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | D |
| 49 | Stated as N2c, no other information | N2c | RN | RN |
| 50 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 52 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 60 | Stated as N2, NOS | N2NOS | RN | RN |
| 70 | Stated as N3, no other information | N3 | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

*For codes 10, 12, 20, 22, 30, 32, 40, 42, 49, 50, 52 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS

CS Mets at DX

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 to 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Supraclavicular (transverse cervical) Distant lymph node(s), NOS | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|--|----|---|---|
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description |
|-------------|--|
| 000 | No involved regional nodes |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters) |
| 989 | 989 millimeters or larger |
| 990 | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |
| 991 | Described as less than 1 cm |
| 992 | Described as less than 2 cm |
| 993 | Described as less than 3 cm |
| 994 | Described as less than 4 cm |
| 995 | Described as less than 5 cm |
| 996 | Described as less than 6 cm |
| 997 | Described as more than 6 cm |
| 999 | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record |

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No extracapsular extension |
| 001 | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically |
| 005 | Extracapsular extension present pathologically |
| 888 | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100 | Level I lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level II lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Level III lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level I and II lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level I and III lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Level II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

**Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS
CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck**

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100 | Level IV lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level V lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 110 | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 011 | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 111 | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

**Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS
CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck**

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100 | Level VI lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level VII lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 011 | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 111 | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved |

| | |
|-----|---|
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |
|-----|---|

**Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS
CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital
Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck**

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100 | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Site-Specific Surgery Codes

Oral Cavity

Lip C000–C009, Base of Tongue C019, Other Parts of Tongue C020–C029,
Gum C030–C039, Floor of Mouth C040–C049, Palate C050–C059,
Other Parts of Mouth C060–C069
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)

Codes

- 00 None; **no surgery** of primary site; **autopsy ONLY**
 - 10 Local tumor destruction, NOS
 - 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
 - 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
 - 13 Cryosurgery
 - 14 Laser

No specimen sent to **pathology** from surgical events 10–14

20 Local tumor excision, NOS

- 26 Polypectomy
- 27 Excisional biopsy

Any **combination** of **20** or **26–27** WITH

- 21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 22 Electrocautery
- 23 Cryosurgery
- 24 Laser ablation
- 25 Laser excision

[**SEER Note:** Codes 21 to 25 above combine 20 Local tumor excision, 26 Polypectomy or 27 Excisional biopsy with 21 PDT, 22 Electrocautery, 23 Cryosurgery, 24 Laser ablation or 25 Laser excision]

Specimen sent to **pathology** from surgical events 20–27

[**SEER Note:** Codes 20-27 include shave and wedge resection]

30 Wide excision, NOS

Code 30 includes:

- Hemiglossectomy
- Partial glossectomy

40 Radical excision of tumor, NOS

- 41 Radical excision of tumor ONLY
- 42 Combination of 41 WITH resection in continuity with mandible (marginal, segmental, hemi-, or total resection)
- 43 Combination of 41 WITH resection in continuity with maxilla (partial, subtotal, or total resection)

[**SEER Note:** In continuity with or “en bloc” means that all of the tissues were removed during the same procedure, but not necessarily in a single specimen]

Codes 40–43 include:

- Total glossectomy
- Radical glossectomy

90 Surgery, NOS

99 **Unknown** if surgery performed; **death certificate** ONLY

Collaborative Staging Codes

Gum, Upper

C03.0

C03.0 Upper gum

| | | |
|-------------------|--|---|
| CS Tumor Size | CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes | The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table |
| CS Extension | CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| CS Lymph Nodes | CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| Reg LN Pos | CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| Reg LN Exam | | |
| CS Mets at DX | | |
| CS Mets Eval | | |

Gum, Upper

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, Upper

CS Extension

Note: Superficial erosion alone of bone/tooth socket by gingival primary is not sufficient to code as bone involvement.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor confined to lamina propria (mucoperiosteum) (stroma) | * | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS | * | L | L |
| 50 | Buccal mucosa (inner cheek) Floor of mouth Labial mucosa (inner lip), lip Tongue | * | RE | RE |
| 55 | Facial muscle, NOS Subcutaneous soft tissue of face | * | RE | RE |
| 60 | Lateral pharyngeal wall (tonsillar pillars and fossae, tonsils) | * | RE | RE |
| 70 | Maxilla | T4a | RE | RE |
| 72 | Deep muscle of tongue: Genioglossus Hyoglossus Palatoglossus Styloglossus | T4a | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|-----|---|---|
| 74 | Maxillary antrum (sinus) Nasal cavity | T4a | D | D |
| 76 | Skin | T4a | D | D |
| 79 | Skull | T4b | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension, including: Masticator space Pterygoid plates Skull base Encases internal carotid artery | T4b | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

*For codes 10, 30, 50, 55, 60, and 65 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Gum, Upper

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, Upper

CS Lymph Nodes

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Retropharyngeal, NOS Regional lymph node, NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 12 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal | | | |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|---------------|--|-------|----|----|
| 12, cont'd | Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | * | D | D |
| 18 | Stated as N1, no other information | N1 | RN | RN |
| 19 | Stated as N2a, no other information | N2a | RN | RN |
| 20 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10 | * | RN | RN |
| 22 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12 | * | D | D |
| 29 | Stated as N2b, no other information | N2b | RN | RN |
| 30 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 32 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 40 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | RN | RN |
| 42 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | D |
| 49 | Stated as N2c, no other information | N2c | RN | RN |
| 50 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 52 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 60 | Stated as N2, NOS | N2NOS | RN | RN |
| 70 | Stated as N3, no other information | N3 | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

*For codes 10, 12, 20, 22, 30, 32, 40, 42, 49, 50, 52 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Gum, Upper
CS Reg Nodes Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, Upper
Reg LN Pos
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, Upper
Reg LN Exam
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, Upper
CS Mets at DX

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Supraclavicular (transverse cervical) Distant lymph node(s), NOS | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

Gum, Upper
CS Mets Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, Upper

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description |
|---------|--|
| 000 | No involved regional nodes |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters) |
| 989 | 989 millimeters or larger |
| 990 | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |
| 991 | Described as less than 1 cm |
| 992 | Described as less than 2 cm |
| 993 | Described as less than 3 cm |
| 994 | Described as less than 4 cm |
| 995 | Described as less than 5 cm |
| 996 | Described as less than 6 cm |
| 997 | Described as more than 6 cm |
| 999 | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record |

Gum, Upper

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No extracapsular extension |
| 001 | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically |
| 005 | Extracapsular extension present pathologically |
| 888 | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Gum, Upper

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100 | Level I lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level II lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Level III lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level I and II lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level I and III lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Level II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Gum, Upper

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|--|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100 | Level IV lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level V lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 110 | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 011 | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 111 | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|---|
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |
|-----|---|

Gum, Upper

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100 | Level VI lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level VII lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 011 | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 111 | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Gum, Upper

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100 | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Collaborative Staging Codes
Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area
Retromolar gingiva (trigone)

C03.1, C06.2

C03.1 Lower gum

C06.2 Retromolar area

CS Tumor Size
 CS Extension
 CS TS/Ext-Eval
 CS Lymph Nodes
 CS Reg Nodes Eval
 Reg LN Pos
 Reg LN Exam
 CS Mets at DX
 CS Mets Eval

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes
CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck
CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck
CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck
CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck
CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website:
 Histology Exclusion Table
 AJCC Stage
 Extension Size Table
 Lymph Nodes Size Table

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area
CS Tumor Size
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area
CS Extension

Note: Superficial erosion alone of bone/tooth socket by gingival primary is not sufficient to code as bone involvement (code 70).

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor confined to lamina propria (mucoperiosteum)(stroma) | * | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS | * | L | L |
| 50 | Buccal mucosa (inner cheek) Floor of mouth Labial mucosa (inner lip), lip Tongue | * | RE | RE |
| 55 | Facial muscle, NOS Subcutaneous soft tissue of face | * | RE | RE |
| 60 | Lateral pharyngeal wall (tonsillar pillars and fossae, tonsils) | * | RE | RE |
| 65 | Soft palate including uvula | * | RE | RE |
| 70 | Mandible | T4a | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|-----|----|----|
| 72 | Deep muscle of tongue: Genioglossus Hyoglossus Palatoglossus Styloglossus | T4a | RE | RE |
| 76 | Skin | T4a | D | D |
| 79 | Skull | T4b | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension, including: Masticator space Pterygoid plates Skull base Encases internal carotid artery | T4b | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

*For codes 10, 30, 50, 55, 60, and 65 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area

CS Lymph Nodes

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular | * | RN | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|---------------|--|-----|----|----|
| 10, cont'd | <p>Level IV node Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Other groups Facial: Buccinator (buccal) Nasolabial Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular, NOS Regional lymph node, NOS</p> | * | RN | RN |
| 12 | <p>Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4)</p> | * | D | D |
| 18 | Stated as N1, no other information | N1 | RN | RN |
| 19 | Stated as N2a, no other information | N2a | RN | RN |
| 20 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10 | * | RN | RN |
| 22 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12 | * | D | D |
| 29 | Stated as N2b, no other information | N2b | RN | RN |
| 30 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 32 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 40 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | RN | RN |
| 42 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | D |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|-------|----|----|
| 49 | Stated as N2c, no other information | N2c | RN | RN |
| 50 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 52 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 60 | Stated as N2, NOS | N2NOS | RN | RN |
| 70 | Stated as N3, no other information | N3 | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

*For codes 10, 12, 20, 22, 30, 32, 40, 42, 49, 50, 52 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

**Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area
CS Reg Nodes Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area
Reg LN Pos
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area
Reg LN Exam
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area
CS Mets at DX**

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Supraclavicular (transverse cervical) Distant lymph node(s), NOS | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |

| | | | | |
|----|--|----|---|---|
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |
|----|--|----|---|---|

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description |
|---------|--|
| 000 | No involved regional nodes |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters) |
| 989 | 989 millimeters or larger |
| 990 | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |
| 991 | Described as less than 1 cm |
| 992 | Described as less than 2 cm |
| 993 | Described as less than 3 cm |
| 994 | Described as less than 4 cm |
| 995 | Described as less than 5 cm |
| 996 | Described as less than 6 cm |
| 997 | Described as more than 6 cm |
| 999 | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record |

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description |
|------|--|
| 000 | No extracapsular extension |
| 001 | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|---|
| 005 | Extracapsular extension present pathologically |
| 888 | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100 | Level I lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level II lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Level III lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level I and II lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level I and III lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Level II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|--|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100 | Level IV lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level V lymph node(s) involved |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|---|
| 001 | Retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 110 | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 011 | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 111 | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100 | Level VI lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level VII lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 011 | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 111 | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100 | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Collaborative Staging Codes

Gum, NOS

C03.9

C03.9 Gum, NOS

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| <p>CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval</p> | <p>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</p> | <p>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table</p> |
|---|---|--|

Gum, NOS

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, NOS

CS Extension

Note: Superficial erosion alone of bone/tooth socket by gingival primary is not sufficient to code as bone involvement.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor confined to lamina propria mucoperiosteum) (stroma) | * | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS | * | L | L |
| 50 | Buccal mucosa (inner cheek) Labial mucosa (inner lip), lip | * | RE | RE |
| 55 | Facial muscle, NOS Subcutaneous soft tissue of face | * | RE | RE |
| 60 | Lateral pharyngeal wall (tonsillar pillars and fossae, tonsils) | * | RE | RE |
| 72 | Deep muscle of tongue: Genioglossus Hyoglossus Palatoglossus Styloglossus | T4a | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|-----|---|---|
| 76 | Skin | T4a | D | D |
| 79 | Skull | T4b | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension, including: Masticator space Pterygoid plates Skull base Encases internal carotid artery | T4b | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

*For codes 10, 30, 50, 55, 60, and 65 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

**Gum, NOS
CS TS/Ext-Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Gum, NOS
CS Lymph Nodes**

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Other groups Facial: Buccinator (buccal) Nasolabial | * | RN | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|---------------|---|-----|----|----|
| 10, cont'd | Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular, NOS Regional lymph node, NOS | | | |
| 12 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | * | D | D |
| 18 | Stated as N1, no other information | N1 | RN | RN |
| 19 | Stated as N2a, no other information | N2a | RN | RN |
| 20 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10 | * | RN | RN |
| 22 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12 | * | D | D |
| 29 | Stated as N2b, no other information | N2b | RN | RN |
| 30 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 32 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 40 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | RN | RN |
| 42 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | D |
| 49 | Stated as N2c, no other information | N2c | RN | RN |
| 50 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 52 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|--|-------|----|----|
| 60 | Stated as N2, NOS | N2NOS | RN | RN |
| 70 | Stated as N3, no other information | N3 | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

*For codes 10, 20, 30, 40, 49, 50 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Gum, NOS

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, NOS

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, NOS

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, NOS

CS Mets at DX

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Supraclavicular (transverse cervical) Distant lymph node(s), NOS | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

Gum, NOS

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, NOS

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description |
|---------|--|
| 000 | No involved regional nodes |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters) |
| 989 | 989 millimeters or larger |
| 990 | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |
| 991 | Described as less than 1 cm |
| 992 | Described as less than 2 cm |
| 993 | Described as less than 3 cm |
| 994 | Described as less than 4 cm |
| 995 | Described as less than 5 cm |
| 996 | Described as less than 6 cm |
| 997 | Described as more than 6 cm |
| 999 | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record |

Gum, NOS

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No extracapsular extension |
| 001 | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically |
| 005 | Extracapsular extension present pathologically |
| 888 | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Gum, NOS

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100 | Level I lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level II lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Level III lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level I and II lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level I and III lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Level II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Gum, NOS

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|--|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100 | Level IV lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level V lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 110 | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 011 | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|---|
| 111 | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Gum, NOS

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100 | Level VI lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level VII lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 011 | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 11 | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Gum, NOS

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|--|
| 000 | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100 | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|---|
| 001 | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Collaborative Staging Codes

Floor of Mouth

C04.0-C04.1, C04.8-C04.9

- C04.0 Anterior floor of mouth
- C04.1 Lateral floor of mouth
- C04.8 Overlapping lesion of floor of mouth
- C04.9 Floor of mouth, NOS

| | | |
|--|--|---|
| CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table |
|--|--|---|

Floor of Mouth

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Floor of Mouth

CS Extension

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor on one side confined to: Lamina propria Submucosa | * | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS | * | L | L |
| 40 | Tumor crosses midline | * | L | L |
| 50 | Anterior 2/3 of tongue Base of tongue Gingiva (alveolar ridge), lower | * | RE | RE |
| 53 | Sublingual gland, including ducts Submandibular (submaxillary) glands, including ducts | * | RE | RE |
| 60 | Epiglottis Glossoepiglottic fold Glossopharyngeal sulcus Lateral pharyngeal wall Pharyngeal (lingual) surface | * | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|---------------|---|-----|----|----|
| 60, cont'd | Pharyngoepiglottic fold Tonsillar pillars and fossae Tonsils Vallecula | | | |
| 62 | Extension to deep extrinsic muscle of tongue: Genioglossus Geniohyoid Hyoglossus Mylohyoid Palatoglossus Styloglossus | T4a | L | L |
| 63 | (62) + any of [(50) or (53) or (60)] | T4a | RE | RE |
| 64 | Subcutaneous soft tissue of chin/neck | T4a | RE | RE |
| 70 | Mandible | T4a | RE | RE |
| 76 | Skin of undersurface of chin/neck | T4a | RE | RE |
| 77 | Further contiguous extension: Maxillary sinus | T4a | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension: Base of skull Masticator space Pterygoid plates | T4b | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

***Note:** For Extension codes 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 53, and 60 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Floor of Mouth

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Floor of Mouth

CS Lymph Nodes

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

table begins on next page

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular, NOS Sublingual Regional lymph node, NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 12 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | * | D | D |
| 18 | Stated as N1, no other information | N1 | RN | RN |
| 19 | Stated as N2a, no other information | N2a | RN | RN |
| 20 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10 | * | RN | RN |
| 22 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12 | * | D | D |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|-------|----|----|
| 29 | Stated as N2b, no other information | N2b | RN | RN |
| 30 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral nodes(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 32 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 40 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | RN | RN |
| 42 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | D |
| 49 | Stated as N2c, no other information | N2c | RN | RN |
| 50 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 52 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 60 | Stated as N2, NOS | N2NOS | RN | RN |
| 70 | Stated as N3, no other information | N3 | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

*For codes 10, 20, 30, 40, 49, 50 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

**Floor of Mouth
CS Reg Nodes Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Floor of Mouth
Reg LN Pos
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Floor of Mouth
Reg LN Exam
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

Floor of Mouth

CS Mets at DX

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Supraclavicular (transverse cervical) Distant lymph node(s), NOS | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

Floor of Mouth

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Floor of Mouth

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description |
|---------|--|
| 000 | No involved regional nodes |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters) |
| 989 | 989 millimeters or larger |
| 990 | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |
| 991 | Described as less than 1 cm |
| 992 | Described as less than 2 cm |
| 993 | Described as less than 3 cm |
| 994 | Described as less than 4 cm |
| 995 | Described as less than 5 cm |
| 996 | Described as less than 6 cm |
| 997 | Described as more than 6 cm |
| 999 | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record |

Floor of Mouth

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No extracapsular extension |
| 001 | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically |
| 005 | Extracapsular extension present pathologically |
| 888 | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Floor of Mouth

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100 | Level I lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level II lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Level III lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level I and II lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level I and III lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Level II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Floor of Mouth

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100 | Level IV lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level V lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 110 | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 011 | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 111 | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Floor of Mouth

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100 | Level VI lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level VII lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 011 | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|---|
| 111 | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Floor of Mouth

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100 | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Page left blank

Page left blank

Site-Specific Surgery Codes

Oral Cavity

Lip C000–C009, Base of Tongue C019, Other Parts of Tongue C020–C029,
Gum C030–C039, Floor of Mouth C040–C049, Palate C050–C059,

Other Parts of Mouth C060–C069

(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)

Codes

00 None; **no surgery** of primary site; **autopsy ONLY**

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS

11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)

12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)

13 Cryosurgery

14 Laser

No specimen sent to **pathology** from surgical events 10–14

20 **Local tumor excision**, NOS

26 Polypectomy

27 Excisional biopsy

Any **combination** of 20 or 26–27 WITH

21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)

22 Electrocautery

23 Cryosurgery

24 Laser ablation

25 Laser excision

[**SEER Note:** Codes 21 to 25 above combine 20 Local tumor excision, 26 Polypectomy or 27 Excisional biopsy with 21 PDT, 22 Electrocautery, 23 Cryosurgery, 24 Laser ablation or 25 Laser excision]

Specimen sent to **pathology** from surgical events 20–27

[**SEER Note:** Codes 20-27 include shave and wedge resection]

30 Wide excision, NOS

Code 30 includes:

Hemiglossectomy

Partial glossectomy

40 **Radical excision** of tumor, NOS

41 Radical excision of tumor **ONLY**

42 Combination of 41 WITH resection in continuity with mandible (marginal, segmental, hemi-, or total resection)

43 Combination of 41 WITH resection in continuity with maxilla (partial, subtotal, or total resection)

[**SEER Note:** In continuity with or “en bloc” means that all of the tissues were removed during the same procedure, but not necessarily in a single specimen]

Codes 40–43 include:

Total glossectomy

Radical glossectomy

90 Surgery, NOS

99 **Unknown** if surgery performed; **death certificate** ONLY

Collaborative Staging Codes

Hard Palate

C05.0

C05.0 Hard palate

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| <p>CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval</p> | <p>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</p> | <p>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table</p> |
|---|---|--|

Hard Palate

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Hard Palate

CS Extension

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor on one side confined to mucoperiosteum (stroma) | * | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS | * | L | L |
| 40 | Tumor crosses midline | * | L | L |
| 50 | Buccal mucosa (inner cheek) Gingiva, upper Glossopalatine arch Pharyngopalatine arch Soft palate Uvula | * | RE | RE |
| 70 | Maxillary bone Palatine bone | T4a | RE | RE |
| 74 | Deep muscle of tongue Floor of nose Maxillary antrum (sinus) Nasal cavity Nasopharynx Skin of face Sphenoid bone | T4a | D | D |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|-----|---|---|
| 76 | Pterygoid plate | T4b | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension | T4b | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

*For Extension codes 10, 30, 40, and 50 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Hard Palate

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Hard Palate

CS Lymph Nodes

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular, NOS Retropharyngeal Regional lymph node, NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 11 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submental | * | D | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|--|-----|----|----|
| 12 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Parapharyngeal Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | * | D | D |
| 18 | Stated as N1, no other information | N1 | RN | RN |
| 19 | Stated as N2a, no other information | N2a | RN | RN |
| 20 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10 | * | RN | RN |
| 21 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11 | * | D | RN |
| 22 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12 | * | D | D |
| 29 | Stated as N2b, no other information | N2b | RN | RN |
| 30 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 31 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | RN |
| 32 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 40 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | RN | RN |
| 41 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | RN |
| 42 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | D |
| 49 | Stated as N2c, no other information | N2c | RN | RN |
| 50 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s) not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 51 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive node(s) not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|-------|----|----|
| 52 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 60 | Stated as N2, NOS | N2NOS | RN | RN |
| 70 | Stated as N3, no other information | N3 | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information | * | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Hard Palate

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Hard Palate

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Hard Palate

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Hard Palate

CS Mets at DX

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Supraclavicular (transverse cervical) Distant lymph node(s), NOS | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

Hard Palate
CS Mets Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Hard Palate
CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description |
|---------|--|
| 000 | No involved regional nodes |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters) |
| 989 | 989 millimeters or larger |
| 990 | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |
| 991 | Described as less than 1 cm |
| 992 | Described as less than 2 cm |
| 993 | Described as less than 3 cm |
| 994 | Described as less than 4 cm |
| 995 | Described as less than 5 cm |
| 996 | Described as less than 6 cm |
| 997 | Described as more than 6 cm |
| 999 | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record |

Hard Palate
CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No extracapsular extension |
| 001 | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically |
| 005 | Extracapsular extension present pathologically |
| 888 | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Hard Palate

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100 | Level I lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level II lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Level III lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level I and II lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level I and III lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Level II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Hard Palate

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|--|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100 | Level IV lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level V lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 110 | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 011 | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|---|
| 111 | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Hard Palate

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100 | Level VI lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level VII lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 011 | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 111 | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Hard Palate

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|--|
| 000 | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100 | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|---|
| 001 | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Collaborative Staging Codes

Soft Palate, Uvula

C05.1-C05.2

C05.1 Soft Palate, NOS

C05.2 Uvula

Note 1: AJCC includes inferior surface of the soft palate (C05.1) and uvula (C05.2) with oropharynx (C09._, C10._).

Note 2: Soft palate excludes nasopharyngeal (superior) surface of soft palate (C11.3).

| | | |
|-------------------|--|---|
| CS Tumor Size | CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes | The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table |
| CS Extension | CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| CS Lymph Nodes | CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| Reg LN Pos | CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| Reg LN Exam | | |
| CS Mets at DX | | |
| CS Mets Eval | | |

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS Extension

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor on one side confined to: Lamina propria Submucosa | * | L | L |
| 20 | Musculature invaded | * | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS | * | L | L |
| 40 | Tumor crosses midline | * | L | L |
| 50 | Buccal mucosa (inner cheek) Gum (gingiva), upper | * | RE | RE |
| 60 | Lateral pharyngeal wall Tonsillar pillars and fossae Tonsils | * | RE | RE |
| 65 | Hard palate | T4a | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|-----|----|---|
| 70 | Mandible Maxilla Palatine bone (bone of hard palate) | T4a | D | D |
| 71 | Pterygoid muscle, medial or NOS | T4a | D | D |
| 72 | Tongue Deep extrinsic muscle of tongue | T4a | D | D |
| 73 | Larynx | T4a | D | D |
| 74 | Maxillary antrum (sinus) Nasopharynx, lateral or NOS | T4b | D | D |
| 77 | Nasal cavity | T4a | RE | D |
| 78 | Pterygoid muscle, lateral Pterygoid plates Note: For medial pterygoid muscle or pterygoid muscle, NOS, see code 71 | T4b | RE | D |
| 79 | [(77) or (78)] with any of [(70) to (76)] | T4b | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension Carotid artery Skull base | T4b | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

*For Extension codes 10, 20, 40, 50, and 60 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS Lymph Nodes

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

table begins on next page

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular, NOS Regional lymph node, NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 11 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Other groups Retropharyngeal | * | D | RN |
| 12 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Parapharyngeal Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | * | D | D |
| 18 | Stated as N1, no other information | N1 | RN | RN |
| 19 | Stated as N2a, no other information | N2a | RN | RN |
| 20 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10 | * | RN | RN |
| 21 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11 | * | D | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|-------|----|----|
| 22 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12 | * | D | D |
| 29 | Stated as N2b, no other information | N2b | RN | RN |
| 30 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 31 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | RN |
| 32 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 40 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | RN | RN |
| 41 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | RN |
| 42 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | D |
| 49 | Stated as N2c, no other information | N2c | RN | RN |
| 50 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s) not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 51 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive node(s) not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | RN |
| 52 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 60 | Stated as N2, NOS | N2NOS | RN | RN |
| 70 | Stated as N3, no other information | N3 | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information | * | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

*For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Soft Palate, Uvula

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Soft Palate, Uvula

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS Mets at DX

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Supraclavicular (transverse cervical) Distant lymph node(s), NOS | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description |
|---------|--|
| 000 | No involved regional nodes |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters) |
| 989 | 989 millimeters or larger |
| 990 | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |
| 991 | Described as less than 1 cm |
| 992 | Described as less than 2 cm |
| 993 | Described as less than 3 cm |
| 994 | Described as less than 4 cm |
| 995 | Described as less than 5 cm |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|--|
| 996 | Described as less than 6 cm |
| 997 | Described as more than 6 cm |
| 999 | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record |

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No extracapsular extension |
| 001 | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically |
| 005 | Extracapsular extension present pathologically |
| 888 | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100 | Level I lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level II lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Level III lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level I and II lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level I and III lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Level II and III lymph nodes involved |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|---|
| 111 | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100 | Level IV lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level V lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 110 | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 011 | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 111 | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100 | Level VI lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level VII lymph node(s) involved |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|---|
| 001 | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 011 | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 111 | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100 | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Site-Specific Surgery Codes

Oral Cavity

Lip C000–C009, Base of Tongue C019, Other Parts of Tongue C020–C029,
Gum C030–C039, Floor of Mouth C040–C049, **Palate C050–C059**,
Other Parts of Mouth C060–C069
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)

Codes

00 None; **no surgery** of primary site; **autopsy ONLY**

- 10 Local tumor destruction, NOS
- 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
- 13 Cryosurgery
- 14 Laser

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10–14

20 **Local tumor excision**, NOS

- 26 Polypectomy
- 27 Excisional biopsy

Any **combination** of 20 or 26–27 WITH

- 21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 22 Electrocautery
- 23 Cryosurgery
- 24 Laser ablation
- 25 Laser excision

[**SEER Note:** Codes 21 to 25 above combine 20 Local tumor excision, 26 Polypectomy or 27 Excisional biopsy with 21 PDT, 22 Electrocautery, 23 Cryosurgery, 24 Laser ablation or 25 Laser excision]

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20–27

[**SEER Note:** Codes 20-27 include shave and wedge resection]

30 Wide excision, NOS

Code 30 includes:

- Hemiglossectomy
- Partial glossectomy

40 **Radical excision** of tumor, NOS

- 41 Radical excision of tumor ONLY
- 42 Combination of 41 WITH resection in continuity with mandible (marginal, segmental, hemi-, or total resection)
- 43 Combination of 41 WITH resection in continuity with maxilla (partial, subtotal, or total resection)

[**SEER Note:** In continuity with or “en bloc” means that all of the tissues were removed during the same procedure, but not necessarily in a single specimen]

Codes 40–43 include:

- Total glossectomy
- Radical glossectomy

90 Surgery, NOS

99 **Unknown** if surgery performed; **death certificate ONLY**

Page left blank

Collaborative Staging Codes

Other Mouth

C05.8-C05.9, C06.8-C06.9

- C05.8 Overlapping lesion of palate
- C05.9 Palate, NOS
- C06.8 Overlapping lesion of other and unspecified parts of mouth
- C06.9 Mouth, NOS

| | | |
|--|---|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval | <p>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes</p> <p>CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</p> <p>CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</p> <p>CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</p> <p>CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</p> <p>CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</p> | <p>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table |
|--|---|---|

Other Mouth

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Mouth

CS Extension

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor confined to: Lamina propria Submucosa | * | L | L |
| 20 | Musculature invaded | * | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS | * | L | L |
| 50 | Adjacent oral cavity | * | RE | RE |
| 60 | Extension to oropharynx: Inferior surface of soft palate Lateral pharyngeal wall Lingual surface of epiglottis Vallecula | * | RE | RE |
| 70 | Extension to adjacent structures: Mandible Maxilla Maxillary antrum (sinus) Nasal cavity | T4a | D | D |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|--------------|---|-----|---|---|
| 70 cont'd | Skin of face/neck Tongue | | | |
| 71 | Deep extrinsic muscle of tongue | T4a | D | D |
| 72 | Skull | T4b | D | D |
| 75 | Base of skull Encases internal carotid artery Masticator space Pterygoid plates | T4b | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension | T4b | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

*For Extension codes 10, 20, 30, 50, and 60 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Other Mouth

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Mouth

CS Lymph Nodes

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Lower deep cervical Lower jugular | * | RN | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|--------------|---|-----|----|----|
| 10 cont'd | Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular, NOS Regional lymph node, NOS | | | |
| 12 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | * | D | D |
| 18 | Stated as N1, no other information | N1 | RN | RN |
| 19 | Stated as N2a, no other information | N2a | RN | RN |
| 20 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10 | * | RN | RN |
| 22 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12 | * | D | D |
| 29 | Stated as N2b, no other information | N2b | RN | RN |
| 30 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 32 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 40 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | RN | RN |
| 42 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | D |
| 49 | Stated as N2c, no other information | N2c | RN | RN |
| 50 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 52 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|--|-------|----|----|
| 60 | Stated as N2, NOS | N2NOS | RN | RN |
| 70 | Stated as N3, no other information | N3 | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

*For codes 10, 12, 20, 22, 30, 32, 40, 42, 49, 50, 52 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Other Mouth

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Mouth

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Mouth

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Mouth

CS Mets at DX

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Supraclavicular (transverse cervical) Distant lymph node(s), NOS | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

Other Mouth

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Mouth

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description |
|---------|--|
| 000 | No involved regional nodes |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters) |
| 989 | 989 millimeters or larger |
| 990 | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |
| 991 | Described as less than 1 cm |
| 992 | Described as less than 2 cm |
| 993 | Described as less than 3 cm |
| 994 | Described as less than 4 cm |
| 995 | Described as less than 5 cm |
| 996 | Described as less than 6 cm |
| 997 | Described as more than 6 cm |
| 999 | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record |

Other Mouth

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No extracapsular extension |
| 001 | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically |
| 005 | Extracapsular extension present pathologically |
| 888 | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Other Mouth

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100 | Level I lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level II lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Level III lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level I and II lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level I and III lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Level II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Other Mouth

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|--|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100 | Level IV lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level V lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 110 | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 011 | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 111 | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|---|
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |
|-----|---|

Other Mouth

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100 | Level VI lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level VII lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 011 | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 111 | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Other Mouth

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|--|
| 000 | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100 | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|---|
| 110 | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Collaborative Staging Codes

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

C06.0-C06.1

C06.0 Cheek mucosa

C06.1 Vestibule of mouth

| | | |
|-------------------|--|---|
| CS Tumor Size | CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes | The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table |
| CS Extension | CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| CS Lymph Nodes | CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| Reg LN Pos | CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| Reg LN Exam | | |
| CS Mets at DX | | |
| CS Mets Eval | | |

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

CS Extension

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor confined to: Lamina propria Submucosa | * | L | L |
| 20 | Musculature (buccinator) | * | RE | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS | * | L | L |
| 50 | Lip(s) including commissure | * | RE | RE |
| 51 | Gingiva | * | RE | RE |
| 60 | Lateral pharyngeal wall Tonsillar pillars and fossae Tonsils | * | RE | RE |
| 65 | Subcutaneous soft tissue of cheek | T4a | RE | RE |
| 66 | Skin of cheek (WITH or WITHOUT ulceration) | T4a | RE | D |
| 67 | Maxillary sinus | T4a | D | D |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|-----|---|---|
| 70 | Bone (cortical): Mandible Maxilla | T4a | D | D |
| 73 | Skull | T4b | D | D |
| 75 | Tongue Deep extrinsic muscle of tongue | T4a | D | D |
| 79 | Other contiguous extension: Base of skull Encases internal carotid artery Masticator space Pterygoid plates | T4b | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension: Hard palate Soft palate | T4b | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

*For Extension codes 10, 20, 30, 50, 51, and 60 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

CS Lymph Nodes

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular | * | RN | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|---------------|---|-----|----|----|
| 10, cont'd | Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Other groups Facial: Buccinator (buccal) Nasolabial Parotid, NOS Infra-auricular Preauricular Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular, NOS Regional lymph node, NOS | | | |
| 12 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | * | D | D |
| 18 | Stated as N1, no other information | N1 | RN | RN |
| 19 | Stated as N2a, no other information | N2a | RN | RN |
| 20 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10 | * | RN | RN |
| 22 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12 | * | D | D |
| 29 | Stated as N2b, no other information | N2b | RN | RN |
| 30 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple or regional | * | RN | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|-------|----|----|
| 32 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 40 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | RN | RN |
| 42 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | D |
| 49 | Stated as N2c, no other information | N2c | RN | RN |
| 50 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 52 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 60 | Stated as N2, NOS | N2NOS | RN | RN |
| 70 | Stated as N3, no other information | N3 | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

*For codes 10, 12, 20, 22, 30, 32, 40, 42, 49, 50, 52 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

CS Mets at DX

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Distant lymph node(s), NOS | M1 | D | D |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|--|----|---|---|
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

**Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule
CS Mets Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule
CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes**

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description |
|---------|--|
| 000 | No involved regional nodes |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters) |
| 989 | 989 millimeters or larger |
| 990 | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |
| 991 | Described as less than 1 cm |
| 992 | Described as less than 2 cm |
| 993 | Described as less than 3 cm |
| 994 | Described as less than 4 cm |
| 995 | Described as less than 5 cm |
| 996 | Described as less than 6 cm |
| 997 | Described as more than 6 cm |
| 999 | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record |

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No extracapsular extension |
| 001 | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically |
| 005 | Extracapsular extension present pathologically |
| 888 | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100 | Level I lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level II lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Level III lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level I and II lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level I and III lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Level II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100 | Level IV lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level V lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 110 | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 011 | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 111 | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100 | Level VI lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level VII lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 011 | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 111 | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|---|
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |
|-----|---|

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100 | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Site-Specific Surgery Codes

Oral Cavity

Lip C000–C009, Base of Tongue C019, Other Parts of Tongue C020–C029,
Gum C030–C039, Floor of Mouth C040–C049, **Palate C050–C059**,

Other Parts of Mouth C060–C069

(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)

Codes

00 None; **no surgery** of primary site; **autopsy ONLY**

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS

11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)

12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)

13 Cryosurgery

14 Laser

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10–14

20 **Local tumor excision**, NOS

26 Polypectomy

27 Excisional biopsy

Any **combination** of 20 or 26–27 WITH

21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)

22 Electrocautery

23 Cryosurgery

24 Laser ablation

25 Laser excision

[**SEER Note:** Codes 21 to 25 above combine 20 Local tumor excision, 26 Polypectomy or 27 Excisional biopsy with 21 PDT, 22 Electrocautery, 23 Cryosurgery, 24 Laser ablation or 25 Laser excision]

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20–27

[**SEER Note:** Codes 20-27 include shave and wedge resection]

30 Wide excision, NOS

Code 30 includes:

Hemiglossectomy

Partial glossectomy

40 **Radical excision** of tumor, NOS

41 Radical excision of tumor **ONLY**

42 Combination of 41 WITH resection in continuity with mandible (marginal, segmental, hemi-, or total resection)

43 Combination of 41 WITH resection in continuity with maxilla (partial, subtotal, or total resection)

[**SEER Note:** In continuity with or “en bloc” means that all of the tissues were removed during the same procedure, but not necessarily in a single specimen]

Codes 40–43 include:

Total glossectomy

Radical glossectomy

90 Surgery, NOS

99 **Unknown** if surgery performed; **death certificate** ONLY

Collaborative Staging Codes

Parotid Gland

C07.9

C07.9 Parotid gland

Note: Laterality must be coded for C07.9.

| | | |
|-------------------|--|---|
| CS Tumor Size | CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes | The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table |
| CS Extension | CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| CS Lymph Nodes | CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| Reg LN Pos | CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| Reg LN Exam | | |
| CS Mets at DX | | |
| CS Mets Eval | | |

Parotid Gland

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Parotid Gland

CS Extension

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; non-invasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor confined to gland/duct of origin Multiple foci confined to substance of parotid gland | * | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS | * | L | L |
| 35 | Microscopic extraparenchymal extension ONLY | * | RE | RE |
| | Another major salivary gland (submaxillary, sublingual) Periglandular soft/connective tissue including macroscopic extraparenchymal extension Pharyngeal mucosa Skeletal muscle: Digastric Masseter Pterygoid Sternocleidomastoid Stylohyoid | T3 | RE | RE |
| 42 | External auditory meatus Skin overlying gland | T4a | RE | RE |
| 45 | Periosteum of mandible | T4a | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|-----|----|----|
| 50 | Auricular nerve Mandible Mastoid | T4a | RE | RE |
| 70 | Facial (7th) nerve | T4a | RE | D |
| 72 | Spinal accessory nerve | T4a | RE | D |
| 75 | Major blood vessel(s): Carotid artery Facial artery or vein Jugular vein Maxillary artery | T4b | RE | RE |
| 76 | Base of skull Skull, NOS | T4b | RE | D |
| 77 | Pterygoid plates | T4b | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension | T4b | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

* For Extension codes 10, 30, 35, and 40 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size as shown in the Extension by Size Table for this site.

Parotid Gland

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Parotid Gland

CS Lymph Nodes

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Parotid nodes Infra-auricular Intraparotid Preauricular | * | RN | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|---------------|---|-----|----|----|
| 10, cont'd | Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular Mandibular, NOS Regional lymph node, NOS | | | |
| 11 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level II node Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Lower deep cervical Lower jugular | * | D | RN |
| 12 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | * | D | D |
| 18 | Stated as N1, no other information | N1 | RN | RN |
| 19 | Stated as N2a, no other information | N2a | RN | RN |
| 20 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10 | * | RN | RN |
| 21 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11 | * | D | RN |
| 22 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12 | * | D | D |
| 29 | Stated as N2b, no other information | N2b | RN | RN |
| 30 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 31 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|-------|----|----|
| 32 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 40 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | RN | RN |
| 41 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | RN |
| 42 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | D |
| 49 | Stated as N2c, no other information | N2c | RN | RN |
| 50 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s) not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 51 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive node(s) not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | RN |
| 52 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 60 | Stated as N2, NOS | N2NOS | RN | RN |
| 70 | Stated as N3, no other information | N3 | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information | * | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size table, for this site.

Parotid Gland

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Parotid Gland

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Parotid Gland

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Parotid Gland
CS Mets at DX**

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s) Supraclavicular (transverse cervical) | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

**Parotid Gland
CS Mets Eval**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Parotid Gland
CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes**

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description |
|---------|--|
| 000 | No involved regional nodes |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters) |
| 989 | 989 millimeters or larger |
| 990 | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |
| 991 | Described as less than 1 cm |
| 992 | Described as less than 2 cm |
| 993 | Described as less than 3 cm |
| 994 | Described as less than 4 cm |
| 995 | Described as less than 5 cm |
| 996 | Described as less than 6 cm |
| 997 | Described as more than 6 cm |
| 999 | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record |

Parotid Gland

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No extracapsular extension |
| 001 | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically |
| 005 | Extracapsular extension present pathologically |
| 888 | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Parotid Gland

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100 | Level I lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level II lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Level III lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level I and II lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level I and III lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Level II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Parotid Gland

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100 | Level IV lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level V lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 110 | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 011 | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 111 | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Parotid Gland

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100 | Level VI lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level VII lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 011 | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|---|
| 111 | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Parotid Gland

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100 | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Collaborative Staging Codes

Submandibular Gland

C08.0

C08.0 Submandibular Gland

Note: Laterality must be coded for C08.0.

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| <p>CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval</p> | <p>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</p> | <p>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table</p> |
|---|---|--|

Submandibular Gland

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Submandibular Gland

CS Extension

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; non-invasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor confined to gland/duct of origin | * | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS | * | L | L |
| 35 | Microscopic extraparenchymal extension ONLY | * | RE | RE |
| 40 | Another major salivary gland (parotid, sublingual) Periglandular soft/connective tissue including macroscopic extraparenchymal extension Skeletal muscle: Digastric Genioglossus Geniohyoid Hyoglossus Mylohyoid Palatoglossus Pterygoid Styloglossus Stylohyoid | T3 | RE | RE |
| 45 | Periosteum of mandible | T4a | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|-----|----|----|
| 50 | Mandible Nerves: Facial (7th) Lingual | T4a | RE | RE |
| 51 | External auditory meatus | T4a | D | D |
| 52 | Major blood vessels: Carotid artery Facial artery or vein Maxillary artery | T4b | RE | RE |
| 71 | Base of skull Skull, NOS | T4b | RE | D |
| 72 | Spinal accessory nerve | T4a | RE | D |
| 77 | Pterygoid plates | T4b | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension | T4b | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

* For Extension codes 10, 30, 35, and 40 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on value of CS Tumor Size as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Submandibular Gland

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Submandibular Gland

CS Lymph Nodes

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular | * | RN | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|---------------|---|-----|----|----|
| 10, cont'd | <p>Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular, NOS Regional lymph node, NOS</p> | | | |
| 12 | <p>Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level IV node Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4)</p> | * | D | D |
| 18 | Stated as N1, no other information | N1 | RN | RN |
| 19 | Stated as N2a, no other information | N2a | RN | RN |
| 20 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10 | * | RN | RN |
| 22 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12 | * | D | D |
| 29 | Stated as N2b, no other information | N2b | RN | RN |
| 30 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 32 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 40 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | RN | RN |
| 42 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | D |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|-------|----|----|
| 49 | Stated as N2c, no other information | N2c | RN | RN |
| 50 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 52 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 60 | Stated as N2, NOS | N2NOS | RN | RN |
| 70 | Stated as N3, no other information | N3 | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

*For codes 10, 12, 20, 22, 30, 32, 40, 42, 49, 50, 52 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

**Submandibular Gland
CS Reg Nodes Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Submandibular Gland
Reg LN Pos
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Submandibular Gland
Reg LN Exam
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Submandibular Gland
CS Mets at DX**

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s) Supraclavicular (transverse cervical) | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

Submandibular Gland
CS Mets Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Submandibular Gland
CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description |
|---------|--|
| 000 | No involved regional nodes |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters) |
| 989 | 989 millimeters or larger |
| 990 | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |
| 991 | Described as less than 1 cm |
| 992 | Described as less than 2 cm |
| 993 | Described as less than 3 cm |
| 994 | Described as less than 4 cm |
| 995 | Described as less than 5 cm |
| 996 | Described as less than 6 cm |
| 997 | Described as more than 6 cm |
| 999 | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record |

Submandibular Gland
CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description |
|------|--|
| 000 | No extracapsular extension |
| 001 | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically |
| 005 | Extracapsular extension present pathologically |
| 888 | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement |

| | |
|-----|---|
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |
|-----|---|

Submandibular Gland

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100 | Level I lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level II lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Level III lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level I and II lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level I and III lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Level II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Submandibular Gland

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|--|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100 | Level IV lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level V lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 110 | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|---|
| 101 | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 011 | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 111 | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Submandibular Gland

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100 | Level VI lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level VII lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 011 | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 111 | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Submandibular Gland

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|--|
| 000 | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|---|
| 100 | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Collaborative Staging Codes

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

C08.1, C08.8-C08.9

C08.1 Sublingual gland

C08.8 Overlapping lesion of major salivary glands

C08.9 Major salivary gland, NOS

Note: Laterality must be coded for C08.1.

| | | |
|-------------------|--|---|
| CS Tumor Size | CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes | The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table |
| CS Extension | CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| CS Lymph Nodes | CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| Reg LN Pos | CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| Reg LN Exam | | |
| CS Mets at DX | | |
| CS Mets Eval | | |

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

CS Extension

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; non-invasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor confined to gland/duct of origin | * | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS | * | L | L |
| 35 | Microscopic extraparenchymal extension ONLY | * | RE | RE |
| 40 | Extension to: Another major salivary gland (parotid, submandibular) Periglandular soft/connective tissue including extraparenchymal extension Skeletal muscle: Digastric Pterygoid Stylohyoid | T3 | RE | RE |
| 45 | Periosteum of mandible | T4a | RE | RE |
| 51 | Mandible Nerves: Facial (7th) Lingual | T4a | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|-----|----|----|
| 60 | Skin | T4a | D | D |
| 62 | External auditory meatus | T4a | D | D |
| 65 | Blood vessel(s): Carotid artery Facial artery or vein Maxillary artery | T4b | RE | RE |
| 71 | Base of skull Skull, NOS | T4b | RE | D |
| 72 | Spinal accessory nerve | T4a | RE | D |
| 79 | Pterygoid plates | T4b | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension | T4b | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

* For Extension codes 10, 30, and 35 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on value of CS Tumor Size as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

CS Lymph Nodes

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Cervical, NOS Mandibular, NOS Regional lymph node, NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 12 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level II node Upper deep cervical Upper jugular | * | D | D |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|--------------|---|-----|----|----|
| 12 cont'd | <p>Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular</p> <p>Level IV node Lower deep cervical Lower jugular</p> <p>Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes)</p> <p>Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal</p> <p>Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX)</p> <p>Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4)</p> | | | |
| 18 | Stated as N1, no other information | N1 | RN | RN |
| 19 | Stated as N2a, no other information | N2a | RN | RN |
| 20 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10 | * | RN | RN |
| 22 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12 | * | D | D |
| 29 | Stated as N2b, no other information | N2b | RN | RN |
| 30 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 32 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 40 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | RN | RN |
| 42 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | D |
| 49 | Stated as N2c, no other information | N2c | RN | RN |
| 50 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 52 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|--|-------|----|----|
| 60 | Stated as N2, NOS | N2NOS | RN | RN |
| 70 | Stated as N3, no other information | N3 | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

*For codes 10, 12, 20, 22, 30, 32, 40, 42, 49, 50, 52 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

CS Mets at DX

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s) Supraclavicular (transverse cervical) | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description |
|---------|--|
| 000 | No involved regional nodes |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters) |
| 989 | 989 millimeters or larger |
| 990 | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |
| 991 | Described as less than 1 cm |
| 992 | Described as less than 2 cm |
| 993 | Described as less than 3 cm |
| 994 | Described as less than 4 cm |
| 995 | Described as less than 5 cm |
| 996 | Described as less than 6 cm |
| 997 | Described as more than 6 cm |
| 999 | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record |

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description |
|------|--|
| 000 | No extracapsular extension |
| 001 | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically |
| 005 | Extracapsular extension present pathologically |

| | |
|-----|---|
| 888 | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100 | Level I lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level II lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Level III lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level I and II lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level I and III lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Level II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|--|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100 | Level IV lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level V lymph node(s) involved |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|---|
| 001 | Retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 110 | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 011 | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 111 | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100 | Level VI lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level VII lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 011 | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 111 | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

**Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands
CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital
Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck**

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100 | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Site-Specific Surgery Codes

Parotid and Other Unspecified Glands

Parotid Gland C079, Major Salivary Glands C080–C089

(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)

Codes

00 None; **no surgery** of primary site; **autopsy ONLY**

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS

11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)

12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)

13 Cryosurgery

14 Laser

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10–14

20 **Local tumor excision**, NOS

26 Polypectomy

27 Excisional biopsy

Any **combination** of **20** or **26–27** WITH

21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)

22 Electrocautery

23 Cryosurgery

24 Laser ablation

25 Laser excision

[**SEER Note:** Codes 21 to 25 above combine 20 Local tumor excision, 26 Polypectomy or 27 Excisional biopsy with 21 PDT, 22 Electrocautery, 23 Cryosurgery, 24 Laser ablation, or 25 Laser excision]

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20–27

[**SEER Note:** Codes 30-80 include major salivary gland, NOS]

30 **Less than total parotidectomy**, NOS; **less than total removal of major salivary gland**, NOS

[**SEER Notes:** Includes less than total removal of other major salivary gland When the operative report specifies nerve monitoring, it means that a nerve sparing surgery is being done]

31 Facial nerve spared

32 Facial nerve sacrificed

33 Superficial lobe **ONLY**

34 Facial nerve spared

35 Facial nerve sacrificed

36 Deep lobe (Total)

[**SEER Note:** With or without superficial lobe]

37 Facial nerve spared

38 Facial nerve sacrificed

[**SEER Note:** Codes 40-80 include submandibulectomy; submaxillectomy]

- 40 Total parotidectomy, NOS; total removal of major salivary gland, NOS
 - 41 Facial nerve spared
 - 42 Facial nerve sacrificed

- 50 Radical parotidectomy, NOS; radical removal of major salivary gland, NOS
 - 51 WITHOUT removal of temporal bone
 - 52 WITH removal of temporal bone
 - 53 WITH removal of overlying skin (requires graft or flap coverage)

- 80 Parotidectomy, NOS

- 90 Surgery, NOS

- 99 **Unknown** if surgery performed; **death certificate** ONLY

Collaborative Staging Codes

Tonsil, Oropharynx

C09.0-C09.1, C09.8-C09.9, C10.0, C10.2-C10.4, C10.8-C10.9

- C09.0 Tonsillar fossa
- C09.1 Tonsillar pillar
- C09.8 Overlapping lesion of tonsil
- C09.9 Tonsil, NOS (excludes lingual tonsil C02.4)
- C10.0 Vallecula
- C10.2 Lateral wall of oropharynx
- C10.3 Posterior wall of oropharynx
- C10.4 Branchial cleft (site of neoplasm)
- C10.8 Overlapping lesion of oropharynx
- C10.9 Oropharynx, NOS

Note 1: Laterality must be coded for C09.0, C09.1, C09.8, and C09.9.

Note 2: AJCC includes base of tongue (C01.9) with oropharynx (C09._, C10._).

| | | |
|--|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | <p>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table |
|--|--|---|

Tonsil, Oropharynx

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Tonsil, Oropharynx

CS Extension

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor confined to one of the following subsites: Anterior wall (including vallecula and lingual (anterior) surface of epiglottis) One lateral wall Posterior wall | * | L | L |
| 20 | Involvement of two or more subsites: Posterior, anterior or lateral wall(s) | * | L | L |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|--|-----|----|----|
| 30 | Localized, NOS | * | L | L |
| 40 | Soft palate, inferior surface including uvula, or soft palate, NOS | * | RE | RE |
| 41 | Hypopharynx NOS Pyriform sinus | * | RE | RE |
| 42 | Soft palate, superior (nasopharyngeal) surface | * | RE | RE |
| 50 | Base of tongue Buccal mucosa (inner cheek) Floor of mouth Gum (gingiva) | * | RE | RE |
| 55 | Any extension coded in 10-50 WITH fixation | * | RE | RE |
| 60 | Prevertebral fascia or muscle Soft tissue of neck | * | RE | RE |
| 62 | Nasopharynx, lateral, or NOS | T4b | RE | RE |
| 65 | Larynx, NOS Medial pterygoid muscle, or pterygoid muscle, NOS Posterior surface of epiglottis | T4a | RE | RE |
| 70 | Deep extrinsic muscles of tongue: Genioglossus Geniohyoid Hyoglossus Mylohyoid Palatoglossus Styloglossus Hard palate Mandible | T4a | D | D |
| 72 | Lateral pterygoid muscle Pterygoid plates | T4b | D | D |
| 75 | Bone of skull | T4b | D | D |
| 76 | Bone | T4b | D | D |
| 77 | Carotid artery | T4b | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension: Anterior 2/3 of tongue Parotid gland | T4b | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

* For codes 10, 20, 40, 41, 42, 50, 55, and 60 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Tonsil, Oropharynx
CS TS/Ext-Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Tonsil, Oropharynx
CS Lymph Nodes

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular Regional lymph node, NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 11 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental | * | D | RN |
| 12 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal | * | D | D |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|---------------|---|-------|----|----|
| 12, cont'd | Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | | | |
| 18 | Stated as N1, no other information | N1 | RN | RN |
| 19 | Stated as N2a, no other information | N2a | RN | RN |
| 20 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10 | * | RN | RN |
| 21 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11 | * | D | RN |
| 22 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12 | * | D | D |
| 29 | Stated as N2b, no other information | N2b | RN | RN |
| 30 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 31 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | RN |
| 32 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 40 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | RN | RN |
| 41 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | RN |
| 42 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | D |
| 49 | Stated as N2c, no other information | N2c | RN | RN |
| 50 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s) not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 51 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive node(s) not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | RN |
| 52 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 60 | Stated as N2, NOS | N2NOS | RN | RN |
| 70 | Stated as N3, no other information | N3 | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information | * | RN | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|--|----|---|---|
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |
|----|--|----|---|---|

* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Tonsil, Oropharynx
CS Reg Nodes Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Tonsil, Oropharynx
Reg LN Pos
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Tonsil, Oropharynx
Reg LN Exam
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Tonsil, Oropharynx
CS Mets at DX

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Supraclavicular (transverse cervical) Distant lymph node(s), NOS | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

Tonsil, Oropharynx
CS Mets Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Tonsil, Oropharynx

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description |
|---------|--|
| 000 | No involved regional nodes |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters) |
| 989 | 989 millimeters or larger |
| 990 | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |
| 991 | Described as less than 1 cm |
| 992 | Described as less than 2 cm |
| 993 | Described as less than 3 cm |
| 994 | Described as less than 4 cm |
| 995 | Described as less than 5 cm |
| 996 | Described as less than 6 cm |
| 997 | Described as more than 6 cm |
| 999 | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record |

Tonsil, Oropharynx

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No extracapsular extension |
| 001 | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically |
| 005 | Extracapsular extension present pathologically |
| 888 | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Tonsil, Oropharynx

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100 | Level I lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level II lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Level III lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level I and II lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level I and III lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Level II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Tonsil, Oropharynx

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|--|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100 | Level IV lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level V lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 110 | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 011 | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 111 | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved |

| | |
|-----|---|
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |
|-----|---|

Tonsil, Oropharynx

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100 | Level VI lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level VII lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 011 | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 111 | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Tonsil, Oropharynx

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|--|
| 000 | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100 | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|---|
| 110 | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Page left blank.

Collaborative Staging Codes
Anterior Surface of Epiglottis
C10.1

C10.1 Anterior surface of epiglottis

Note: AJCC includes lingual (anterior) surface of epiglottis (C10.1) with larynx. SEER Extent of Disease included it with oropharynx.

| | | |
|-------------------|--|---|
| CS Tumor Size | CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes | The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Lymph Nodes Size Table |
| CS Extension | CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| CS Lymph Nodes | CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| Reg LN Pos | CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| Reg LN Exam | | |
| CS Mets at DX | | |
| CS Mets Eval | | |

Anterior Surface of Epiglottis
CS Tumor Size
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anterior Surface of Epiglottis
CS Extension

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor confined to anterior surface of epiglottis with normal vocal cord mobility | T1 | L | L |
| 20 | Mucosa of adjacent subsite(s) of oropharynx | T2 | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS | T1 | L | L |
| 31 | Vallecula without fixation of larynx | T2 | L | L |
| 32 | Mucosa of adjacent subsite(s) of supraglottis (including posterior surface of epiglottis) without fixation of larynx | T2 | RE | RE |
| 33 | Larynx, glottic or NOS, without fixation of larynx | T2 | RE | RE |
| 34 | Pyramidal sinus, medial wall or NOS, without fixation of larynx | T2 | RE | RE |
| 35 | Mucosa of base of tongue without fixation of larynx | T2 | RE | RE |
| 36 | Any of (10) to (35) with vocal cord fixation | T3 | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|--|-----|----|----|
| 37 | Paraglottic space Pre-epiglottic tissues | T3 | RE | RE |
| 38 | Minor thyroid cartilage erosion (inner cortex) (see also code 67) | T3 | D | D |
| 39 | Hypopharynx, NOS Postcricoid area Pyriform sinus except medial wall (see code 34) | T3 | RE | RE |
| 43 | (38) + (39) | T3 | D | D |
| 45 | Soft palate, inferior surface including uvula, or soft palate, NOS | T4a | RE | RE |
| 47 | Nasopharynx, NOS Soft palate, superior (nasopharyngeal) surface | T4a | RE | RE |
| 50 | Base of tongue, except mucosa (see code 35) Buccal mucosa (inner cheek) Floor of mouth Gum (gingiva) | T4a | RE | RE |
| 62 | Soft tissues of neck | T4a | RE | RE |
| 65 | Pterygoid muscle | T4a | RE | RE |
| 66 | [(38) or (43)] + any of [(45) to (65)] | T4a | D | D |
| 67 | Invasion through thyroid cartilage (see also code 38) Thyroid cartilage, NOS | T4a | D | D |
| 68 | Trachea | T4a | D | D |
| 69 | Esophagus Strap muscles Thyroid | T4a | D | D |
| 70 | Extrinsic muscles of tongue: Genioglossus Geniohyoid Hyoglossus Mylohyoid Palatoglossus Styloglossus | T4a | D | D |
| 75 | Prevertebral fascia or muscle Prevertebral space | T4b | RE | RE |
| 77 | (75) + any of [(66) to (70)] | T4b | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension, including: Anterior 2/3 of tongue Bone Encases carotid artery Hard palate Mandible Mediastinal structures Parotid gland | T4b | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|----|---|---|
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |
|----|---|----|---|---|

Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

CS Lymph Nodes

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Retropharyngeal Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular Regional lymph node, NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 11 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental | * | D | RN |
| 12 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) | * | D | D |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|---------------|--|-----|----|----|
| 12, cont'd | Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular fossa Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | | | |
| 18 | Stated as N1, no other information | N1 | RN | RN |
| 19 | Stated as N2a, no other information | N2a | RN | RN |
| 20 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10 | * | RN | RN |
| 21 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11 | * | D | RN |
| 22 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12 | * | D | D |
| 29 | Stated as N2b, no other information | N2b | RN | RN |
| 30 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 31 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | RN |
| 32 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 40 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | RN | RN |
| 41 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | RN |
| 42 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | D |
| 49 | Stated as N2c, no other information | N2c | RN | RN |
| 50 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s) not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 51 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive node(s) not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|-------|----|----|
| 52 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 60 | Stated as N2, NOS | N2NOS | RN | RN |
| 70 | Stated as N3, no other information | N3 | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information | * | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

**Anterior Surface of Epiglottis
CS Reg Nodes Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Anterior Surface of Epiglottis
Reg LN Pos
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Anterior Surface of Epiglottis
Reg LN Exam
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Anterior Surface of Epiglottis
CS Mets at DX**

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s), including mediastinal | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (codes 08 -10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

**Anterior Surface of Epiglottis
CS Mets Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description |
|---------|--|
| 000 | No involved regional nodes |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters) |
| 989 | 989 millimeters or larger |
| 990 | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |
| 991 | Described as less than 1 cm |
| 992 | Described as less than 2 cm |
| 993 | Described as less than 3 cm |
| 994 | Described as less than 4 cm |
| 995 | Described as less than 5 cm |
| 996 | Described as less than 6 cm |
| 997 | Described as more than 6 cm |
| 999 | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record |

Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No extracapsular extension |
| 001 | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically |
| 005 | Extracapsular extension present pathologically |
| 888 | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100 | Level I lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level II lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Level III lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level I and II lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level I and III lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Level II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|--|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100 | Level IV lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level V lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 110 | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 011 | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 111 | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved |

| | |
|-----|---|
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |
|-----|---|

Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100 | Level VI lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level VII lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 011 | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 111 | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|--|
| 000 | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100 | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|---|
| 110 | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Page left blank

Collaborative Staging Codes

Nasopharynx

C11.0-C11.3, C11.8-C11.9

- C11.0 Superior wall of nasopharynx
- C11.1 Posterior wall of nasopharynx
- C11.2 Lateral wall of nasopharynx
- C11.3 Anterior wall of nasopharynx
- C11.8 Overlapping lesion of nasopharynx
- C11.9 Nasopharynx, NOS

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| <p>CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval</p> | <p>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</p> | <p>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Lymph Nodes Size Table</p> |
|---|---|--|

Nasopharynx

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Nasopharynx

CS Extension

Note: Parapharyngeal involvement denotes postero-lateral infiltration of tumor beyond the pharyngobasilar fascia. Involvement of the masticator space denotes extension of tumor beyond the anterior surface of the lateral pterygoid muscle, or lateral extension beyond the postero-lateral wall of the maxillary antrum, pterygo-maxillary fissure.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor confined to one of the following subsites: Inferior wall (superior surface of soft palate) One lateral wall Posterior superior wall (vault) | T1 | L | L |
| 20 | Involvement of two or more subsites: Lateral wall extending into eustachian tube/middle ear Posterior, inferior, or lateral wall(s) | T1 | L | L |
| 30 | Confined to nasopharynx Localized, NOS | T1 | L | L |
| 40 | Oropharynx Soft palate, inferior surface | T2a | RE | RE |
| 50 | Nasal cavity | T2a | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|-----|----|----|
| 55 | Any extension coded in 10-50 WITH fixation or tumor Described only as FIXED | T4 | RE | RE |
| 56 | Any extension coded in 10-50 WITH parapharyngeal extension | T2b | RE | RE |
| 57 | Hard palate | T4 | D | RE |
| 58 | Pterygopalatine fossa | T4 | RE | RE |
| 60 | Bone, including skull | T3 | RE | RE |
| 62 | Paranasal sinus | T3 | D | RE |
| 65 | Orbit | T4 | RE | D |
| 70 | Brain Cranial nerves Hypopharynx Infratemporal fossa Orbit Intracranial extension, NOS | T4 | D | D |
| 75 | Masticator space | T4 | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension Soft tissues of the neck | T4 | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

Nasopharynx

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Nasopharynx

CS Lymph Nodes

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular | * | RN | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|---------------|---|----|----|----|
| 10, cont'd | Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Retropharyngeal Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular Regional lymph node, NOS | | | |
| 11 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental | * | D | RN |
| 12 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular fossa | * | D | D |
| 18 | Stated as N1, no other information | N1 | RN | RN |
| 20 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10 | * | RN | RN |
| 21 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11 | * | D | RN |
| 22 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12 | * | D | D |
| 30 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 31 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | RN |
| 32 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|--|-------|----|----|
| 40 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | RN | RN |
| 41 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | RN |
| 42 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | D |
| 50 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s) not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 51 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive node(s) not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | RN |
| 52 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 60 | Stated as N2, no other information | N2 | RN | RN |
| 70 | Stated as N3, NOS | N3NOS | RN | RN |
| 75 | Regional lymph nodes in the supraclavicular fossa: Inferior deep cervical (scalene) Spinal accessory (posterior cervical) Supraclavicular (transverse cervical) | N3b | D | D |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information | * | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table, for this site.

Nasopharynx

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Nasopharynx

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Nasopharynx
Reg LN Exam
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Nasopharynx
CS Mets at DX**

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Distant lymph node(s), NOS | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

**Nasopharynx
CS Mets Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Nasopharynx
CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes**

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description |
|---------|--|
| 000 | No involved regional nodes |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters) |
| 989 | 989 millimeters or larger |
| 990 | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |
| 991 | Described as less than 1 cm |
| 992 | Described as less than 2 cm |
| 993 | Described as less than 3 cm |
| 994 | Described as less than 4 cm |
| 995 | Described as less than 5 cm |
| 996 | Described as less than 6 cm |
| 997 | Described as more than 6 cm |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|--|
| 999 | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record |
|-----|--|

Nasopharynx

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No extracapsular extension |
| 001 | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically |
| 005 | Extracapsular extension present pathologically |
| 888 | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Nasopharynx

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100 | Level I lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level II lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Level III lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level I and II lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level I and III lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Level II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved |

| | |
|-----|---|
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |
|-----|---|

Nasopharynx

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100 | Level IV lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level V lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 110 | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 011 | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 111 | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Nasopharynx

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100 | Level VI lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level VII lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|---|
| 110 | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 011 | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 111 | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Nasopharynx

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100 | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Collaborative Staging Codes

Pyriiform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx

C12.9, C13.0-C13.2, C13.8-C13.9

- C12.9 Pyriiform sinus
- C13.0 Postericoid region
- C13.1 Hypopharyngeal aspect of aryepiglottic fold
- C13.2 Posterior wall of hypopharynx
- C13.8 Overlapping lesion of hypopharynx
- C13.9 Hypopharynx, NOS

| | | |
|--|--|---|
| CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table |
|--|--|---|

Pyriiform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pyriiform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx

CS Extension

Note: If fixation of hemilarynx or larynx code to 55 not 51.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor confined to one of the following subsites: Laryngopharynx Postericoid area Posterior pharyngeal wall Pyriiform sinus | * | L | L |
| 20 | Tumor involves adjacent subsite(s) (listed in code 10) WITHOUT fixation | * | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS | * | L | L |
| 40 | Oropharynx | * | RE | RE |
| 50 | Larynx | * | RE | RE |
| 51 | Any of codes 10-40 WITH fixation of tumor or fixation, NOS | * | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|-----|----|----|
| 55 | Fixation of hemilarynx or larynx | T3 | RE | RE |
| 60 | Soft tissues of neck including Prelaryngeal strap muscles and subcutaneous fat | T4a | RE | RE |
| 61 | Esophagus | T4a | RE | RE |
| 62 | Thyroid gland | T4a | D | RE |
| 63 | Cricoid cartilage Thyroid cartilage | T4a | D | RE |
| 64 | Prevertebral fascia/muscle(s) | T4b | RE | RE |
| 65 | Carotid artery | T4b | D | RE |
| 66 | Hyoid bone | T4a | D | D |
| 70 | Mediastinal structures | T4b | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension | T4b | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

*For Extension codes 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, and 51 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on value of CS Tumor Size as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx

CS Lymph Nodes

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular | * | RN | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|---------------|--|-----|----|----|
| 10, cont'd | Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Retropharyngeal Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular Regional lymph node, NOS | | | |
| 11 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital | * | D | RN |
| 12 | Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | * | D | D |
| 18 | Stated as N1, no other information | N1 | RN | RN |
| 19 | Stated as N2a, no other information | N2a | RN | RN |
| 20 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10 | * | RN | RN |
| 21 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11 | * | D | RN |
| 22 | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12 | * | D | D |
| 29 | Stated as N2b, no other information | N2b | RN | RN |
| 30 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 31 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|-------|----|----|
| 32 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 40 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | RN | RN |
| 41 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | RN |
| 42 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes | * | D | D |
| 49 | Stated as N2c, no other information | N2c | RN | RN |
| 50 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s) not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | RN | RN |
| 51 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive node(s) not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | RN |
| 52 | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral AND not stated if single or multiple | * | D | D |
| 60 | Stated as N2, NOS | N2NOS | RN | RN |
| 70 | Stated as N3, no other information | N3 | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information | * | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx
CS Mets at DX**

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Supraclavicular (transverse cervical) Distant lymph node(s), NOS | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

**Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx
CS Mets Eval**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx
CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes**

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description |
|---------|--|
| 000 | No involved regional nodes |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters) |
| 989 | 989 millimeters or larger |
| 990 | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |
| 991 | Described as less than 1 cm |
| 992 | Described as less than 2 cm |
| 993 | Described as less than 3 cm |
| 994 | Described as less than 4 cm |
| 995 | Described as less than 5 cm |
| 996 | Described as less than 6 cm |
| 997 | Described as more than 6 cm |
| 999 | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record |

Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx**CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck**

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No extracapsular extension |
| 001 | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically |
| 005 | Extracapsular extension present pathologically |
| 888 | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx**CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck**

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100 | Level I lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level II lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Level III lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level I and II lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level I and III lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Level II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

**Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx
CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck**

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100 | Level IV lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level V lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 110 | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 011 | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 111 | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

**Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx
CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck**

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100 | Level VI lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level VII lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 011 | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|---|
| 111 | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

**Pyriiform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx
CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital
Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck**

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100 | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Collaborative Staging Codes

Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

C14.0, C14.2, C14.8

C14.0 Pharynx, NOS

C14.2 Waldeyer ring

C14.8 Overlapping lesion of lip, oral cavity

Note: AJCC does not define TNM staging for this site.

| | | |
|-------------------|--|---|
| CS Tumor Size | CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes | The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage |
| CS Extension | CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| CS Lymph Nodes | CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| Reg LN Pos | CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | |
| Reg LN Exam | | |
| CS Mets at DX | | |
| CS Mets Eval | | |

Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

CS Extension

Note: Definition of Adjacent Structures: Connective tissues large enough to be given a specific name would be considered adjacent structures. For example, the brachial artery has a name, as does the broad ligament. Continuous tumor growth from one organ into an adjacent named structure would be coded to less than 60 in the schemes for ill-defined or non-specific sites.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial | NA | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor confined to site of origin | NA | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS | NA | L | L |
| 40 | More than one region of pharynx involved (oropharynx, nasopharynx, hypopharynx) | NA | RE | RE |
| 50 | Pharynx and oral cavity involved | NA | RE | RE |
| 55 | Any of codes 10-50 WITH fixation | NA | RE | RE |
| 60 | Extension to adjacent structures (See note) | NA | RE | RE |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension | NA | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | NA | U | U |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|----|---|---|
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NA | U | U |
|----|---|----|---|---|

Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

CS TS/Ext-Eval

| Code | Description | Staging Basis |
|------|------------------------------|---------------|
| 9 | Not applicable for this site | NA |

Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

CS Lymph Nodes

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | NA | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Regional lymph node(s) bilateral and/or contralateral: Cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Deep cervical, NOS: Lower, NOS Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Middle Upper, NOS: Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Mandibular, NOS Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Paratracheal Recurrent laryngeal nerve chain Prelaryngeal Delphian node Retropharyngeal Regional lymph node(s), NOS | NA | RN | RN |
| 12 | Regional lymph node(s) bilateral and/or contralateral: Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | NA | D | D |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS | NA | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NA | U | U |

**Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites
CS Reg Nodes Eval**

| Code | Description | Staging Basis |
|------|------------------------------|---------------|
| 9 | Not applicable for this site | NA |

**Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites
Reg LN Pos
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites
Reg LN Exam
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites
CS Mets at DX**

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | NA | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s), including: Mediastinal Supraclavicular (transverse cervical) | NA | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastasis, NOS Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Carcinomatosis | NA | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | NA | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NA | U | U |

**Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites
CS Mets Eval**

| Code | Description | Staging Basis |
|------|------------------------------|---------------|
| 9 | Not applicable for this site | NA |

Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description |
|---------|--|
| 000 | No involved regional nodes |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters) |
| 989 | 989 millimeters or larger |
| 990 | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |
| 991 | Described as less than 1 cm |
| 992 | Described as less than 2 cm |
| 993 | Described as less than 3 cm |
| 994 | Described as less than 4 cm |
| 995 | Described as less than 5 cm |
| 996 | Described as less than 6 cm |
| 997 | Described as more than 6 cm |
| 999 | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record |

Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No extracapsular extension |
| 001 | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically |
| 005 | Extracapsular extension present pathologically |
| 888 | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100 | Level I lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level II lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Level III lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level I and II lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level I and III lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Level II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|--|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100 | Level IV lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level V lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 110 | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 011 | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved |
| 111 | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved |

| | |
|-----|---|
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |
|-----|---|

Pharynx, NOS, and Other III-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100 | Level VI lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Level VII lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved |
| 110 | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 011 | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved |
| 111 | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Pharynx, NOS, and Other III-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description |
|------|--|
| 000 | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100 | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved |
| 010 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved |
| 001 | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | |
|-----|---|
| 110 | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved |
| 101 | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 011 | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 111 | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved |
| 999 | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record |

Page left blank.

Site-Specific Surgery Codes

Pharynx

Tonsil C090–C099, Oropharynx C100–C109, Nasopharynx C110–C119

Pyriiform Sinus C129, Hypopharynx C130–C139, Pharynx C140

(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)

Codes

00 None; **no surgery** of primary site; **autopsy ONLY**

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS

11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)

12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)

13 Cryosurgery

14 Laser

15 Stripping

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10–15

20 **Local tumor excision**, NOS

26 Polypectomy

27 Excisional biopsy

Any **combination** of **20** or **26–27** WITH

21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)

22 Electrocautery

23 Cryosurgery

24 Laser ablation

25 Laser excision

28 Stripping

[**SEER Note:** Codes 21 to 25 and 28 above combine 20 Local tumor excision, 26 Polypectomy or 27 Excisional biopsy with 21 PDT, 22 Electrocautery, 23 Cryosurgery, 24 Laser ablation, 25 Laser excision, or 28 Stripping]

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20–28

30 Pharyngectomy, NOS

31 Limited/partial pharyngectomy; tonsillectomy, bilateral tonsillectomy

32 Total pharyngectomy

40 Pharyngectomy WITH laryngectomy OR removal of contiguous bone tissue, NOS

(does NOT include total mandibular resection)

[**SEER Notes:** Code 40 includes mandibulectomy (marginal, segmental, hemi-, and/or laryngectomy) NOS Contiguous bone tissue refers to the mandible]

41 WITH laryngectomy (laryngopharyngectomy)

42 WITH bone [mandibulectomy]

43 WITH both 41 and 42

[*SEER Notes:*

Use code 40 when the patient had a pharyngectomy and maybe some sort of mandibulectomy and/or maybe a laryngectomy, but the exact procedures are not clear

Use code 41 when the patient had pharyngectomy and laryngectomy but no mandibulectomy

Use code 42 when the patient had pharyngectomy and mandibulectomy but no laryngectomy

Use code 43 when it is certain that the patient had both a mandibulectomy and laryngectomy in addition to the pharyngectomy]

50 **Radical pharyngectomy** (includes total mandibular resection), NOS

51 WITHOUT laryngectomy

52 WITH laryngectomy

90 Surgery, NOS

99 **Unknown** if surgery performed; **death certificate** ONLY

Site-Specific Surgery Codes

All Other Sites

C142–C148, C170–C179, C239, C240–C249, C260–C269, C300–C301, C310–C319, C339, C379, C380–C388, C390–C399, C480–C488, C510–C519, C529, C570–C579, C589, C600–C609, C630–C639, C680–C689, C690–C699, C740–C749, C750–C759

(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)

Codes

00 None; **no surgery** of primary site; **autopsy ONLY**

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS

11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)

12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)

13 Cryosurgery

14 Laser

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10–14

20 **Local tumor excision**, NOS

26 Polypectomy

27 Excisional biopsy

Any **combination** of 20 or 26–27 WITH

21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)

22 Electrocautery

23 Cryosurgery

24 Laser ablation

25 Laser excision

[**SEER Note:** Codes 21 to 25 above combine 20 local tumor excision, 26 Polypectomy or 27 Excisional biopsy with 21 PDT, 22 Electrocautery, 23 Cryosurgery, 24 Laser ablation, or 25 Laser excision]

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20–27

30 Simple/partial surgical removal of primary site

40 **Total surgical removal** of primary site; enucleation

41 Total enucleation (for eye surgery only)

50 Surgery stated to be “**debulking**”

60 Radical surgery

Partial or total removal of the primary site WITH a resection in continuity (partial or total removal) with other organs

[**SEER Note:** In continuity with or “en bloc” means that all of the tissues were removed during the same procedure, but not necessarily in a single specimen]

90 Surgery, NOS

99 **Unknown** if surgery performed; **death certificate ONLY**

Page left blank.

SEER Site-Specific Coding Guidelines
ESOPHAGUS
C150-C155, C158-C159

Primary Site

There are two systems that divide the esophagus into three subsites. The first system divides the esophagus into the upper third, middle third, and lower third. The second system describes the subsites as the cervical esophagus, the thoracic esophagus and the abdominal esophagus. The subsites for these two different systems are not identical. Assign the ICD-O-3 topography code that describes the primary site documented in the medical record. See the *SEER Self Instructional Manual for Tumor Registrars, Book 4* for illustrated descriptions of each system.

Page left blank.

Collaborative Staging Codes

Esophagus

C15.0-C15.5, C15.8-C15.9

- C15.0 Cervical esophagus
- C15.1 Thoracic esophagus
- C15.2 Abdominal esophagus
- C15.3 Upper third of esophagus
- C15.4 Middle third of esophagus
- C15.5 Lower third of esophagus
- C15.8 Overlapping lesion of esophagus
- C15.9 Esophagus, NOS

Anatomic Limits of Esophagus:

Cervical Esophagus (C15.0): From the lower border of the cricoid cartilage to the thoracic inlet (suprasternal notch), about 18 cm from the incisors.

Intrathoracic (including abdominal esophagus) (C15.1 - C15.5): Upper thoracic portion (C15.3): From the thoracic inlet to the level of the tracheal bifurcation (18-24 cm). Mid-thoracic portion (C15.4): From the tracheal bifurcation midway to the gastroesophageal (GE) junction (24-32 cm).

Lower thoracic portion (C15.5): From midway between the tracheal bifurcation and the gastroesophageal junction to the GE junction, including the abdominal esophagus (C15.2) between 32-40 cm.

| | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------|---|
| CS Tumor Size | CS Site-Specific Factor 1 | The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage |
| CS Extension | CS Site-Specific Factor 2 | |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 3 | |
| CS Lymph Nodes | CS Site-Specific Factor 4 | |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 5 | |
| Reg LN Pos | CS Site-Specific Factor 6 | |
| Reg LN Exam | | |
| CS Mets at DX | | |
| CS Mets Eval | | |

Esophagus

CS Tumor Size

Note: For esophagus, this field is used for size of tumor/length of involved esophagus.

| Code | Description |
|---------|--|
| 000 | No mass/tumor found |
| 001-988 | 001 - 988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters) |
| 989 | 989 millimeters or larger |
| 990 | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |
| 991 | Described as less than 1 cm |
| 992 | Described as less than 2 cm |
| 993 | Described as less than 3 cm |
| 994 | Described as less than 4 cm |
| 995 | Described as less than 5 cm |
| 998 | Circumferential |
| 999 | Unknown; size not stated Not documented in patient record |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

Esophagus
CS Extension

Note: Ignore intraluminal extension to adjacent segment(s) of esophagus or to cardia of stomach and code depth of invasion or extra-esophageal spread as indicated.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; non-invasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor confined to mucosa, NOS (including intramucosal, NOS) | T1 | L | L |
| 11 | Invades lamina propria | T1 | L | L |
| 12 | Invades muscularis mucosae | T1 | L | L |
| 16 | Invades submucosa | T1 | L | L |
| 20 | Muscularis propria invaded | T2 | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS | T1 | L | L |
| 40 | Adventitia and/or soft tissue invaded Esophagus is described as "FIXED" | T3 | RE | RE |
| 60 | Tumor invades adjacent structures Cervical esophagus: Blood vessel(s): Carotid artery Jugular vein Subclavian artery Thyroid gland Intrathoracic, upper or mid-portion, esophagus: Blood vessel(s), major: Aorta Azygos vein Pulmonary artery/vein Vena cava Carina Diaphragm Main stem bronchus Trachea Intrathoracic, lower portion (abdominal), esophagus: Blood vessel(s): Aorta Gastric artery/vein Vena cava Diaphragm, not fixed, or NOS Stomach, cardia (via serosa) | T4 | RE | RE |
| 65 | Cervical esophagus: Carina Cervical vertebra(e) Hypopharynx Larynx Trachea | T4 | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|---------------|---|----|----|---|
| 65, cont'd | Intrathoracic esophagus: Lung via bronchus Mediastinal structure(s), NOS Pleura Rib(s) Thoracic vertebra(e) | | | |
| 78 | Thoracic/middle esophagus: Pericardium | T4 | RE | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension: Cervical/upper esophagus: Lung Main stem bronchus Pleura Abdominal/lower esophagus: Diaphragm fixed | T4 | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

Esophagus

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Esophagus

CS Lymph Nodes

Note: Code only regional nodes and nodes, NOS, in this field. Distant nodes are coded in the field Mets at DX.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Regional lymph node(s) (including contralateral or bilateral) For all subsites: Peri-/paraesophageal Cervical esophagus only: Cervical, NOS Anterior deep cervical (laterolateral) (recurrent laryngeal) Internal jugular, NOS: Deep cervical, NOS: Upper, NOS: Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Intrathoracic esophagus, upper or middle, only: Internal jugular, NOS: Deep cervical, NOS: Lower, NOS: Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Middle Upper cervical, NOS: Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Intrabronchial: | N | RN | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|---------------|---|----|----|----|
| 10, cont'd | Carinal (tracheobronchial) (tracheal bifurcation) Hilar (bronchopulmonary) (proximal lobar) (pulmonary root) Peritracheal Left gastric (superior gastric): Cardiac (cardial) Lesser curvature Perigastric, NOS Posterior mediastinal (tracheoesophageal) Intrathoracic esophagus, lower (abdominal) only: Left gastric (superior gastric): Cardiac (cardial) Lesser curvature Perigastric, NOS Posterior mediastinal (tracheoesophageal) | | | |
| 20 | Cervical Esophagus only: Scalene (inferior deep cervical) Supraclavicular (transverse cervical) | N1 | D | RN |
| 22 | Intrathoracic, upper thoracic or middle, only: Superior mediastinal | N1 | D | RN |
| 30 | All esophagus subsites: Anterior mediastinal Mediastinal, NOS Cervical esophagus only: Aortopulmonary Paratracheal Posterior mediastinal Superior mediastinal Intrathoracic esophagus, upper or middle, only: Aortopulmonary Pulmonary ligament Intrathoracic esophagus, lower (abdominal) only: Common hepatic Diaphragmatic Paratracheal Splenic Superior mediastinal | N1 | RN | RN |
| 50 | Regional lymph node(s), NOS | N1 | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS | N1 | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

Esophagus
CS Reg Nodes Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Esophagus

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Esophagus

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Esophagus

CS Mets at DX

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-------|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s), NOS | M1NOS | D | D |
| 11 | Upper thoracic esophagus only: Cervical lymph node(s) Lower thoracic (abdominal) esophagus only: Celiac lymph node(s) | M1a | D | D |
| 12 | Specified distant lymph node(s), other than code 11, including: Cervical esophagus only: Common hepatic Diaphragmatic Pulmonary ligament Splenic Intrathoracic esophagus, upper or middle, only: Common hepatic Diaphragmatic Splenic Lower thoracic (abdominal) esophagus only: Aortopulmonary Pulmonary ligament | M1NOS | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (codes 10 - 12) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1b | D | D |
| 50 | (40) + any of [(10) to (12)] Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1b | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

Esophagus

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Esophagus

CS Site-Specific Factor 1

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Esophagus

CS Site-Specific Factor 2

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Esophagus

CS Site-Specific Factor 3

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Esophagus

CS Site-Specific Factor 4

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Esophagus

CS Site-Specific Factor 5

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Esophagus

CS Site-Specific Factor 6

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Site-Specific Surgery Codes

Esophagus

C150–C159

(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)

Codes

00 None; **no surgery** of primary site; **autopsy ONLY**

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS

11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)

12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)

13 Cryosurgery

14 Laser

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10–14

20 **Local tumor excision**, NOS

26 Polypectomy

27 Excisional biopsy

Any **combination** of **20** or **26–27** WITH

21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)

22 Electrocautery

23 Cryosurgery

24 Laser ablation

25 Laser excision

[**SEER Note:** Codes 21 to 25 above combine 20 Local tumor excision, 26 Polypectomy or 27 Excisional biopsy with 21 PDT, 22 Electrocautery, 23 Cryosurgery, 24 Laser ablation, or 25 Laser excision]

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20–27

30 Partial esophagectomy

40 Total esophagectomy, NOS

50 Esophagectomy, NOS WITH laryngectomy and/or gastrectomy, NOS

[**SEER Note:** Esophagectomy WITH other procedures may be partial, total, or NOS]

51 WITH laryngectomy

52 WITH gastrectomy, NOS

53 Partial gastrectomy

54 Total gastrectomy

55 Combination of 51 WITH any of 52–54

80 Esophagectomy, NOS

90 Surgery, NOS

99 **Unknown** if surgery performed; **death certificate ONLY**

Page left blank.

Collaborative Staging Codes

Stomach

C16.0-C16.6, C16.8-C16.9

- C16.0 Cardia, NOS
- C16.1 Fundus of stomach
- C16.2 Body of stomach
- C16.3 Gastric antrum
- C16.4 Pylorus
- C16.5 Lesser curvature of stomach, NOS
- C16.6 Greater curvature of stomach, NOS
- C16.8 Overlapping lesion of stomach
- C16.9 Stomach, NOS

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> CS Site-Specific Factor 1 CS Site-Specific Factor 2 CS Site-Specific Factor 3 CS Site-Specific Factor 4 CS Site-Specific Factor 5 CS Site-Specific Factor 6 | <p>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Lymph Nodes Number Positive Table |
|--|--|--|

Stomach

CS Tumor Size

| Code | Description |
|---------|--|
| 000 | No mass/tumor found |
| 001-988 | 001 - 988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters) |
| 989 | 989 millimeters or larger |
| 990 | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |
| 991 | Described as less than 1 cm |
| 992 | Described as less than 2 cm |
| 993 | Described as less than 3 cm |
| 994 | Described as less than 4 cm |
| 995 | Described as less than 5 cm |
| 998 | Diffuse; widespread; 3/4's or more: linitis plastica |
| 999 | Unknown; size not stated Not documented in patient record |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

Stomach

CS Extension

Note 1: INTRALUMINAL or INTRAMURAL extension to esophagus and duodenum is classified by the depth of greatest invasion in any of these sites, including stomach. (For extension to esophagus or duodenum via serosa, see code 60.)

Note 2: If the diagnosis states "linitis plastica" and no other information regarding extension is available, use code 35.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 05 | (Adeno)carcinoma in a polyp, noninvasive | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor confined to mucosa, NOS (including intramucosal, NOS) | T1 | L | L |
| 11 | Invades lamina propria | T1 | L | L |
| 12 | Invades muscularis mucosae | T1 | L | L |
| 13 | Confined to head of polyp Extension to stalk | T1 | L | L |
| 14 | Confined to stalk of polyp | T1 | L | L |
| 15 | Tumor in polyp, NOS | T1 | L | L |
| 16 | Invades submucosa (superficial invasion) | T1 | L | L |
| 20 | Invades into but not through muscularis propria | T2a | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS Implants inside stomach | T1 | L | L |
| 35 | Linitis plastica (see Note 2) and no other information regarding extension is available. | T2a | RE | L |
| 40 | Invasion through muscularis propria or muscularis, NOS Extension through wall, NOS Perimuscular tissue invaded Subserosal tissue/(sub)serosal fat invaded | T2b | L | L |
| 45 | Extension to adjacent (connective) tissue WITHOUT perforation of visceral peritoneum: Gastric artery Ligaments: Gastrocolic Gastrohepatic Gastrosplenic Omentum, NOS Greater Lesser Perigastric fat | T2b | RE | RE |
| 50 | Invasion of/through serosa (mesothelium) (tunica serosa) (visceral peritoneum), including perforation of visceral peritoneum covering the gastric ligaments or the omentum WITHOUT invasion of adjacent structures | T3 | RE | RE |
| 55 | (45) + (50) | T3 | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|----|----|----|
| 60 | Diaphragm Duodenum via serosa or NOS Esophagus via serosa Ileum Jejunum Liver Pancreas Small intestine, NOS Spleen Transverse colon (including flexures) | T4 | RE | RE |
| 70 | Abdominal wall Adrenal gland Kidney Retroperitoneum | T4 | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension | T4 | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

Stomach

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Stomach

CS Lymph Nodes

Note: Code only regional nodes and nodes, NOS, in this field. Distant nodes are coded in the field Mets at DX.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Regional lymph node(s): Left gastric (superior gastric), NOS: Cardial Cardioesophageal Gastric, left Gastropancreatic, left Lesser curvature Lesser omental Paracardial Pancreaticosplenic (pancreaticolienal) Pancreatoduodenal Perigastric, NOS Peripancreatic Right gastric (inferior gastric), NOS: Gastrocolic Gastroduodenal Gastroepiploic (gastro-omental), right or NOS Gastrohepatic Greater curvature Greater omental | * | RN | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|---------------|---|----|----|----|
| 10, cont'd | Pyloric, NOS Infrapyloric (subpyloric) Suprapyloric Splenic (lienal), NOS: Gastroepiploic (gastro-omental), left Splenic hilar Nodule(s) in perigastric fat | | | |
| 40 | Celiac Hepatic (excluding gastrohepatic, [see code 10] and hepatoduodenal [see code 42]) | * | D | RN |
| 42 | For lesser curvature only: Hepatoduodenal | * | D | D |
| 50 | Regional lymph node(s), NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph node(s), NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

* For codes 10-80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of the Reg LN Pos using the Lymph Nodes Number Positive table for this site.

Stomach

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Stomach

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Stomach

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Stomach

CS Mets at DX

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s): For all subsites: Inferior mesenteric Para-aortic Porta hepatis (portal) (hilar) (in hilus of liver) Retropancreatic Retroperitoneal Superior mesenteric or mesenteric, NOS For all subsites EXCEPT lesser curvature Hepatoduodenal | M1 | D | D |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|--|----|---|---|
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

**Stomach
CS Mets Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Stomach
CS Site-Specific Factor 1**

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

**Stomach
CS Site-Specific Factor 2**

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

**Stomach
CS Site-Specific Factor 3**

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

**Stomach
CS Site-Specific Factor 4**

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Stomach

CS Site-Specific Factor 5

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Stomach

CS Site-Specific Factor 6

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Site-Specific Surgery Codes

Stomach

C160–C169

(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)

Codes

00 None; **no surgery** of primary site; **autopsy ONLY**

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS

11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)

12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)

13 Cryosurgery

14 Laser

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10–14

20 **Local tumor excision**, NOS

26 Polypectomy

27 Excisional biopsy

Any combination of **20** or **26–27 WITH**

21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)

22 Electrocautery

23 Cryosurgery

24 Laser ablation

25 Laser excision

[**SEER Note:** Codes 21 to 25 above combine 20 Local tumor excision, 26 Polypectomy or 27 Excisional biopsy with 21 PDT, 22 Electrocautery, 23 Cryosurgery, 24 Laser ablation, or 25 Laser excision]

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20–27

30 **Gastrectomy**, NOS (**partial**, subtotal, hemi-)

31 Antrectomy, lower (distal-less than 40% of stomach)***

32 Lower (distal) gastrectomy (partial, subtotal, hemi-)

33 Upper (proximal) gastrectomy (partial, subtotal, hemi-)

Code 30 includes:

Partial gastrectomy, including a sleeve resection of the stomach

Billroth I: anastomosis to duodenum (duodenostomy)

Billroth II: anastomosis to jejunum (jejunostomy)

40 Near-total or total gastrectomy, NOS

41 Near-total gastrectomy

42 Total gastrectomy

A total gastrectomy may follow a previous partial resection of the stomach

50 **Gastrectomy**, NOS WITH removal of a portion of **esophagus**

51 Partial or subtotal gastrectomy

52 Near total or total gastrectomy

Codes 50–52 are used for gastrectomy resection when only portions of esophagus are included in procedure

60 **Gastrectomy** with a resection in continuity with the resection of **other organs**, NOS***

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

- 61 Partial or subtotal gastrectomy, in continuity with the resection of other organs***
- 62 Near total or total gastrectomy, in continuity with the resection of other organs***
- 63 Radical gastrectomy, in continuity with the resection of other organs***

Codes 60–63 are used for gastrectomy resection with organs other than esophagus. Portions of esophagus may or may not be included in the resection.

[*SEER Notes:* A portion of the duodenum may be removed during this procedure; assign codes 60-63 unless the entire duodenum was removed and a gastrojejunostomy was performed. Codes 60-63 may include omentectomy among the organs/tissues removed. In continuity with or “en bloc” means that all of the tissues were removed during the same procedure, but not necessarily in a single specimen]

- 80 Gastrectomy, NOS
- 90 Surgery, NOS
- 99 **Unknown** if surgery performed; **death certificate** ONLY

***Incidental splenectomy NOT included

Collaborative Staging Codes

Small Intestine

C17.0-C17.3, C17.8-C17.9

C17.0 Duodenum

C17.1 Jejunum

C17.2 Ileum (excludes ileocecal valve C18.0)

C17.3 Meckel diverticulum (site of neoplasm)

C17.8 Overlapping lesion of small intestine

C17.9 Small intestine, NOS

| | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------|---|
| CS Tumor Size | CS Site-Specific Factor 1 | The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage |
| CS Extension | CS Site-Specific Factor 2 | |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 3 | |
| CS Lymph Nodes | CS Site-Specific Factor 4 | |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 5 | |
| Reg LN Pos | CS Site-Specific Factor 6 | |
| Reg LN Exam | | |
| CS Mets at DX | | |
| CS Mets Eval | | |

Small Intestine

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Small Intestine

CS Extension

Note 1: Ignore intraluminal or lateral extension to adjacent segment(s) of small intestine and code depth of invasion or spread outside the small intestine as indicated.

Note 2: The nonperitonealized perimuscular tissue is, for jejunum and ileum, part of the mesentery and, for duodenum in areas where serosa is lacking, part of the retroperitoneum.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; non-invasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 05 | (Adeno)carcinoma in a polyp, noninvasive | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor confined to mucosa, NOS, including intramucosal, NOS | T1 | L | L |
| 11 | Invasion of lamina propria | T1 | L | L |
| 12 | Invasion of muscularis mucosae | T1 | L | L |
| 13 | Confined to head of polyp | T1 | L | L |
| 14 | Confined to stalk of polyp | T1 | L | L |
| 15 | Invasion of polyp, NOS | T1 | L | L |
| 16 | Invasion of submucosa (superficial invasion) | T1 | L | L |
| 20 | Muscularis propria invaded | T2 | L | L |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|--|----|----|----|
| 30 | Localized, NOS Intraluminal spread to other segments of small intestine or cecum | T1 | L | L |
| 40 | Invasion through muscularis propria or muscularis, NOS Extension through wall, NOS Subserosal tissue/(sub) serosal fat invaded Transmural, NOS | T3 | L | L |
| 42 | Fat, NOS | T3 | RE | RE |
| 45 | Adjacent connective tissue Mesentery, including mesenteric fat, invaded less than or equal to 2 cm in depth or NOS Nonperitonealized perimuscular tissue invaded less than or equal to 2 cm in depth or NOS Retroperitoneum invaded less than or equal to 2 cm in depth or NOS | T3 | RE | RE |
| 50 | Invasion of/through serosa(mesothelium)(tunica serosa) (visceral peritoneum) | T4 | L | RE |
| 55 | (50) + [(42) or (45)] | T4 | RE | RE |
| 60 | For duodenum primary only: Ampulla of Vater Diaphragm Extrahepatic bile ducts Gallbladder Pancreas Pancreatic duct | T4 | RE | RE |
| 65 | For duodenum primary only: Blood vessel(s), major: Aorta Gastroduodenal artery Portal vein Renal vein Superior mesenteric artery or vein Vena cava Greater omentum Hepatic flexure Kidney, NOS Kidney, right Liver, NOS Liver, quadrate lobe Liver, right lobe Omentum, NOS Transverse colon Ureter, right For jejunum or ileum primary only: Colon, including appendix | T4 | RE | RE |
| 66 | For duodenum primary only: Stomach | T4 | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|----|----|----|
| 67 | For all small intestine sites: Abdominal wall Mesentery invaded greater than 2 cm in depth Non-peritonealized perimuscular tissue invaded greater than 2 cm in depth Retroperitoneum invaded greater than 2 cm in depth | T4 | RE | RE |
| 68 | For all small intestine sites: Other segments of the small intestine via serosa | T4 | RE | RE |
| 70 | For jejunum or ileum primary only: Bladder Fallopian tube Ovary Uterus | T4 | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension | T4 | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

Small Intestine

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Small Intestine

CS Lymph Nodes

Note: Code only regional nodes and nodes, NOS, in this field. Distant nodes are coded in the field Mets at DX.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Regional lymph node(s): For duodenum primaries only: Duodenal Gastroduodenal Hepatic Infrapyloric (subpyloric) Pancreaticoduodenal Pyloric For jejunum or ileum primaries only: Ileocolic for terminal ileum primary Mesenteric, NOS Posterior cecal (retrocecal) for terminal ileum primary Superior mesenteric | N1 | RN | RN |
| 20 | Regional lymph node(s) for duodenum primaries only: Pericholodochal (common bile duct) Superior mesenteric (See code 11 in CS Mets at DX for other lymph nodes of of small intestine) | N1 | D | RN |
| 30 | Regional lymph node(s), NOS | N1 | RN | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|--|----|----|----|
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS | N1 | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

**Small Intestine
CS Reg Nodes Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Small Intestine
Reg LN Pos
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Small Intestine
Reg LN Exam
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Small Intestine
CS Mets at DX**

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s), other than those listed in code 11 including celiac lymph node(s) Distant lymph node(s), NOS | M1 | D | D |
| 11 | For jejunum and ileum primaries only: Pericholodochal (For duodenal primary, see Lymph Nodes field) | M1 | D | RN |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (40) + any of [(10) or (11)] Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

**Small Intestine
CS Mets Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

Small Intestine

CS Site-Specific Factor 1

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Small Intestine

CS Site-Specific Factor 2

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Small Intestine

CS Site-Specific Factor 3

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Small Intestine

CS Site-Specific Factor 4

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Small Intestine

CS Site-Specific Factor 5

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Small Intestine

CS Site-Specific Factor 6

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Page left blank

Site-Specific Surgery Codes

All Other Sites

C142–C148, **C170–C179**, C239, C240–C249, C260–C269, C300–C301, C310–C319, C339, C379, C380–C388, C390–C399, C480–C488, C510–C519, C529, C570–C579, C589, C600–C609, C630–C639, C680–C689, C690–C699, C740–C749, C750–C759

(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)

Codes

00 None; **no surgery** of primary site; **autopsy ONLY**

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS

11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)

12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)

13 Cryosurgery

14 Laser

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10–14

20 **Local tumor excision**, NOS

26 Polypectomy

27 Excisional biopsy

Any **combination** of **20** or **26–27** WITH

21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)

22 Electrocautery

23 Cryosurgery

24 Laser ablation

25 Laser excision

[**SEER Note:** Codes 21 to 25 above combine 20 local tumor excision, 26 Polypectomy or 27 Excisional biopsy with 21 PDT, 22 Electrocautery, 23 Cryosurgery, 24 Laser ablation, or 25 Laser excision]

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20–27

30 Simple/partial surgical removal of primary site

40 **Total surgical removal** of primary site; enucleation

41 Total enucleation (for eye surgery only)

50 Surgery stated to be “**debulking**”

60 Radical surgery

Partial or total removal of the primary site WITH a resection in continuity (partial or total removal) with other organs

[**SEER Note:** In continuity with or “en bloc” means that all of the tissues were removed during the same procedure, but not necessarily in a single specimen]

90 Surgery, NOS

99 **Unknown** if surgery performed; **death certificate ONLY**

Page left blank

SEER Site-Specific Coding Guidelines

**Colon
C180–C189**

Grade

Colon cancer is often graded using a two-grade system; Low Grade (2) or High Grade (4). If the grade is listed as 1/2 or as low grade, convert to a grade 2. If the grade is listed as 2/2 or as high grade, convert to a code 4.

Code the highest grade given.

| Term | Grade | SEER Code |
|--|--------|-----------|
| Well differentiated | I | 1 |
| Fairly well differentiated | II | 2 |
| Low grade | I-II | 2 |
| Mid differentiated | II | 2 |
| Moderately differentiated | II | 2 |
| Partially differentiated | II | 2 |
| Partially well differentiated | I-II | 2 |
| Partially well differentiated | II | 2 |
| Relatively or generally well differentiated | II | 2 |
| Medium grade, intermediate grade | II-III | 3 |
| Moderately poorly differentiated | III | 3 |
| Moderately undifferentiated | III | 3 |
| Poorly differentiated | III | 3 |
| Relatively poorly differentiated | III | 3 |
| Relatively undifferentiated | III | 3 |
| Slightly differentiated | III | 3 |
| High grade | III-IV | 4 |
| Undifferentiated, anaplastic, not differentiated | IV | 4 |

Familial Polyposis

Familial polyposis is an inherited, benign disease. The patients have hundreds of adenomatous polyps throughout their large intestines, and at times, throughout the digestive system. These polyps, if left untreated, invariably develop cancer.

Patients develop polyps as early as ten years of age, but more commonly at puberty. Approximately half of all patients with familial polyposis develop polyps by age 14 and 90% have detectable polyps by age 25.

These patients are usually treated with a colectomy. The pathology report will frequently identify carcinoma insitu in many of the polyps and may also identify invasive carcinomas. Prepare one abstract and code the primary site to colon, NOS (C189). Code the stage of disease using the most invasive of the cancers.

- Synonyms** for familial polyposis:
- Adenomatosis of the colon and rectum (ACR)
 - Familial adenomatous colon polyposis
 - Familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP)
 - Familial colonic polyposis
 - Multiple familial polyposis
 - Polyposis coli

Page left blank

Collaborative Staging Codes

Colon

C18.0-C18.9

- C18.0 Cecum
- C18.1 Appendix
- C18.2 Ascending colon
- C18.3 Hepatic flexure of colon
- C18.4 Transverse colon
- C18.5 Splenic flexure of colon
- C18.6 Descending colon
- C18.7 Sigmoid colon
- C18.8 Overlapping lesion of colon
- C18.9 Colon, NOS

| | | |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|--|
| CS Tumor Size | CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - | The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Lymph Nodes Number Positive Table |
| CS Extension | Carcinoembryonic Antigen (CEA) | |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 2 | |
| CS Lymph Nodes | CS Site-Specific Factor 3 | |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 4 | |
| Reg LN Pos | CS Site-Specific Factor 5 | |
| Reg LN Exam | CS Site-Specific Factor 6 | |
| CS Mets at DX | | |
| CS Mets Eval | | |

Colon

CS Tumor Size

| Code | Description |
|---------|--|
| 000 | No mass/tumor found |
| 001-988 | 001 - 988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters) |
| 989 | 989 millimeters or larger |
| 990 | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |
| 991 | Described as less than 1 cm |
| 992 | Described as less than 2 cm |
| 993 | Described as less than 3 cm |
| 994 | Described as less than 4 cm |
| 995 | Described as less than 5 cm |
| 998 | Familial/multiple polyposis (M-8220/8221) |
| 999 | Unknown; size not stated Not documented in patient record |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

Colon

CS Extension

Note 1: Ignore intraluminal extension to adjacent segment(s) of colon/rectum or to the ileum from the cecum; code depth of invasion or extracolonic spread as indicated.

Note 2: A tumor nodule in the pericolic adipose tissue of a primary carcinoma without histologic evidence of residual lymph node in the nodule is classified as a regional lymph node metastasis if the nodule has the form and smooth contour of a lymph node, or if the contour is not described. If the nodule has an irregular contour, it should be coded in CS Extension as code 45.

Note 3: Codes 60-80 are used for contiguous extension from the site of origin. Discontinuous involvement is coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 05 | (Adeno)carcinoma in a polyp or adenoma, noninvasive | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor confined to mucosa, NOS (including intramucosal, NOS) | Tis | L | L |
| 11 | Lamina propria, including lamina propria in the stalk of a polyp | Tis | L | L |
| 12 | Muscularis mucosae, including muscularis mucosae in the stalk of a polyp | T1 | L | L |
| 13 | Confined to head of polyp, NOS | T1 | L | L |
| 14 | Confined to stalk of polyp, NOS | T1 | L | L |
| 15 | Invasive tumor in polyp, NOS | T1 | L | L |
| 16 | Invades submucosa (superficial invasion), including submucosa in the stalk of a polyp | T1 | L | L |
| 20 | Muscularis propria invaded | T2 | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS Confined to colon, NOS | T1 | L | L |
| 40 | Extension through wall, NOS Invasion through muscularis propria or muscularis, NOS Non-peritonealized pericolic tissues invaded Perimuscular tissue invaded Subserosal tissue/(sub)serosal fat invaded Transmural, NOS | T3 | L | L |
| 42 | Fat, NOS | T3 | RE | RE |
| 45 | Extension to: All colon sites: Adjacent tissue(s), NOS Connective tissue Mesenteric fat Mesentery Mesocolon Pericolic fat Ascending and descending colon Retroperitoneal fat Transverse colon/flexures Gastrocolic ligament Greater omentum | T3 | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|--|----|----|----|
| 46 | Adherent to other organs or structures, but no microscopic tumor found in adhesion(s) | T3 | RE | RE |
| 50 | Invasion of/through serosa (mesothelium) (visceral peritoneum) | T4 | RE | RE |
| 55 | Any of [(42) to (45)] + (50) | T4 | RE | RE |
| 57 | Adherent to other organs or structures, NOS | T4 | RE | RE |
| 60 | All colon sites: Small intestine Cecum and appendix: Greater omentum Ascending colon: Greater omentum Liver, right lobe Transverse colon and flexures: Gallbladder/bile ducts Kidney Liver Pancreas Spleen Stomach Descending colon: Greater omentum Pelvic wall Spleen Sigmoid colon: Greater omentum Pelvic wall | T4 | RE | RE |
| 65 | All colon sites: Abdominal wall Retroperitoneum (excluding fat) | T4 | RE | RE |
| 66 | Ascending colon: Right kidney Right ureter Descending colon: Left kidney Left ureter | T4 | RE | RE |
| 70 | Cecum, appendix, ascending, descending and sigmoid colon: Fallopian tube Ovary Uterus | T4 | D | D |
| 75 | All colon sites unless otherwise stated above: Adrenal (suprarenal) gland Bladder Diaphragm Fistula to skin Gallbladder Other segment(s) of colon via serosa | T4 | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension: Cecum and appendix: Kidney Liver | T4 | D | D |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|--------------|---|----|---|---|
| 80 cont'd | Ureter Transverse colon and flexures: Ureter Sigmoid colon: Cul de sac (rectouterine pouch) Ureter Other contiguous extension | | | |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

Colon

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Colon

CS Lymph Nodes

Note 1: Code only regional nodes and nodes, NOS, in this field. Distant nodes are coded in the field Mets at DX.

Note 2: A tumor nodule in the pericolic adipose tissue of a primary carcinoma without histologic evidence of residual lymph node in the nodule is classified as a regional lymph node metastasis if the nodule has the form and smooth contour of a lymph node, or if the contour is not described. If the nodule has an irregular contour, it should be coded in CS Extension as code 45.

Note 3: Inferior mesenteric nodes are coded in CS Mets at DX for cecum, appendix, ascending colon, transverse colon, and hepatic flexure. Superior mesenteric nodes are coded in CS Mets at DX for all colon sites.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Regional lymph node(s) for all colon sites: Colic (NOS) Epicolic (adjacent to bowel wall) Mesocolic (NOS) Paracolic/pericolic Nodule(s) or foci in pericolic fat/adjacent mesentery/ mesocolic fat | * | RN | RN |
| 20 | Regional lymph node(s), for specific subsites: Cecum and appendix: Cecal: anterior (prececal), posterior (retrocecal); NOS Ileocolic Right colic Ascending colon: Ileocolic Middle colic Right colic Transverse colon and flexures: Inferior mesenteric for splenic flexure only Left colic for splenic flexure only Middle colic Right colic for hepatic flexure only Descending colon: Inferior mesenteric | * | RN | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|---------------|--|----|----|----|
| 20, cont'd | Left colic Sigmoid Sigmoid colon: Inferior mesenteric Sigmoidal (sigmoid mesenteric) Superior hemorrhoidal Superior rectal | | | |
| 30 | Regional lymph node(s) for all colon sites: Mesenteric, NOS Regional lymph node(s), NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

* For codes 10-80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Reg LN Pos, using the Lymph Nodes Number Positive Table for this site.

Colon
CS Reg Nodes Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Colon
Reg LN Pos
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Colon
Reg LN Exam
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Colon
CS Mets at DX

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 08 | Cecum, appendix, ascending, hepatic flexure and transverse colon: Superior mesenteric lymph node(s) | M1 | RN | D |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s) other than code 08 For all colon sites: Common iliac Distant lymph node(s), NOS External iliac Para-aortic Retroperitoneal For cecum, appendix, ascending colon, transverse colon, and hepatic flexure: Inferior mesenteric For splenic flexure, descending colon, and sigmoid colon: Superior mesenteric | M1 | D | D |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|--|----|---|---|
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (codes 08-10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (40) + [(08) or (10)] Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

Colon

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Colon

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Carcinoembryonic Antigen (CEA)

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | Test not done |
| 010 | Positive/elevated |
| 020 | Negative/normal; within normal limits |
| 030 | Borderline; undetermined whether positive or negative |
| 080 | Ordered, but results not in chart |
| 999 | Unknown or no information Not documented in patient record |

Colon

CS Site-Specific Factor 2

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Colon

CS Site-Specific Factor 3

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Colon

CS Site-Specific Factor 4

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Colon

CS Site-Specific Factor 5

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Colon

CS Site-Specific Factor 6

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Page left blank.

Site-Specific Surgery Codes

Colon

C180–C189

(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)

Code removal/surgical ablation of single or multiple liver metastases under the data item *Surgical Procedure/Other Site* (NAACCR Item #1294)

Codes

00 None; **no surgery** of primary site; **autopsy** ONLY

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS

- 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
- 13 Cryosurgery
- 14 Laser

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10–14

20 **Local tumor excision**, NOS

- 27 Excisional biopsy
- 26 Polypectomy, NOS
- 28 Polypectomy-endoscopic
- 29 Polypectomy-surgical excision

Any **combination** of **20** or **26–29** WITH

- 21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 22 Electrocautery
- 23 Cryosurgery
- 24 Laser ablation
- 25 Laser excision

[**SEER Note:** Codes 21 to 25 above combine 20 Local tumor excision, 27 Excisional biopsy, 26 Polypectomy, NOS, 28 Polypectomy-endoscopic or 29 Polypectomy-surgical excision WITH 21 PDT, 22 Electrocautery, 23 Cryosurgery, 24 Laser ablation, or 25 Laser excision]

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20–29

30 **Partial colectomy**, [but less than hemicolectomy] **segmental** resection

- 32 Plus resection of contiguous organ; example: small bowel, bladder

[**SEER Note:** Codes 30 and 32 include but are not limited to: Appendectomy (for an appendix primary only), enterocolectomy, ileocolectomy, partial colectomy, NOS, partial resection of transverse colon and flexures, and segmental resection, such as cecectomy or sigmoidectomy. Removal of a short portion of the distal ileum is not coded as removal of a contiguous organ.]

40 **Subtotal colectomy/hemicolectomy** (total right or left colon and a portion of transverse colon)

- 41 Plus resection of contiguous organ; example: small bowel, bladder

[**SEER Notes:** Code 40 includes extended (but less than total) right or left colectomy
Removal of a short portion of the distal ileum is not coded as removal of a contiguous organ]

50 **Total colectomy** (removal of colon from cecum to the rectosigmoid junction; may include a portion of the rectum)

- 51 Plus resection of contiguous organ; example: small bowel, bladder

[SEER Note: Removal of a short portion of the distal ileum is not coded as removal of a contiguous organ]

60 Total proctocolectomy (removal of colon from cecum to the rectosigmoid junction, including the entire rectum)

[SEER Note: Commonly used for familial polyposis or polyposis coli]

61 Plus resection of contiguous organ; example: small bowel, bladder

[SEER Note: Removal of a short portion of the distal ileum is not coded as removal of a contiguous organ]

70 Colectomy or coloproctectomy with resection of contiguous organ(s), NOS (where there is not enough information to code 32, 41, 51, or 61)

Code 70 includes: Any colectomy (partial, hemicolectomy, or total) WITH a resection of any other organs in continuity with the primary site. Other organs may be partially or totally removed. Other organs may include, but are not limited to, oophorectomy, partial proctectomy, rectal mucosectomy, or pelvic exenteration.

[SEER Note: In continuity with or “en bloc” means that all of the tissues were removed during the same procedure, but not necessarily in a single specimen]

80 Colectomy, NOS

90 Surgery, NOS

99 **Unknown** if surgery performed; **death certificate** ONLY

Collaborative Staging Codes

Rectosigmoid, Rectum

C19.9, C20.9

C19.9 Rectosigmoid junction

C20.9 Rectum, NOS

| | | |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|--|
| CS Tumor Size | CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - | The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Lymph Nodes Number Positive Table |
| CS Extension | Carcinoembryonic Antigen (CEA) | |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 2 | |
| CS Lymph Nodes | CS Site-Specific Factor 3 | |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 4 | |
| Reg LN Pos | CS Site-Specific Factor 5 | |
| Reg LN Exam | CS Site-Specific Factor 6 | |
| CS Mets at DX | | |
| CS Mets Eval | | |

Rectosigmoid, Rectum

CS Tumor Size

| Code | Description |
|---------|--|
| 000 | No mass/tumor found |
| 001-988 | 001 - 988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters) |
| 989 | 989 millimeters or larger |
| 990 | Microscopic focus or foci only; no size given |
| 991 | Described as less than 1 cm |
| 992 | Described as less than 2 cm |
| 993 | Described as less than 3 cm |
| 994 | Described as less than 4 cm |
| 995 | Described as less than 5 cm |
| 998 | Familial/multiple polyposis (M-8220/8221) |
| 999 | Unknown; size not stated Not documented in patient record |

Rectosigmoid, Rectum

CS Extension

Note 1: Ignore intraluminal extension to adjacent segment(s) of colon/rectum and code depth of invasion or extracolonic spread as indicated.

Note 2: A tumor nodule in the pericolic adipose tissue of a primary carcinoma without histologic evidence of residual lymph node in the nodule is classified as a regional lymph node metastasis if the nodule has the form and smooth contour of a lymph node, or if the contour is not described. If the nodule has an irregular contour, it should be coded in CS Extension as code 45.

Note 3: Codes 60-80 are used for contiguous extension from the site of origin. Discontinuous involvement is coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; non-invasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 05 | (Adeno)carcinoma in a polyp or adenoma, noninvasive | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor confined to mucosa, NOS, including intramucosal, NOS | Tis | L | L |
| 11 | Lamina propria, including lamina propria in the stalk of a polyp | Tis | L | L |
| 12 | Muscularis mucosae, including muscularis mucosae in the stalk of a polyp | T1 | L | L |
| 13 | Confined to head of polyp, NOS | T1 | L | L |
| 14 | Confined to stalk of polyp, NOS | T1 | L | L |
| 15 | Invasive tumor in polyp, NOS | T1 | L | L |
| 16 | Submucosa (superficial invasion), including submucosa in the stalk of a polyp | T1 | L | L |
| 20 | Muscularis propria invaded | T2 | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS Confined to rectum, NOS | TX | L | L |
| 40 | Extension through wall, NOS Invasion through muscularis propria or muscularis, NOS Perimuscular tissue invaded Subserosal tissue/(sub)serosal fat invaded Non-peritonealized pericolic tissues invaded Transmural, NOS | T3 | L | L |
| 42 | Fat, NOS | T3 | RE | RE |
| 45 | Adjacent (connective) tissue: For all sites: Perirectal fat For rectosigmoid: Mesentery (including mesenteric fat, mesocolon) Pericolonic fat For rectum: Extension to anus Rectovaginal septum | T3 | RE | RE |
| 46 | Adherent to other organs or structures but no tumor found in adhesion(s) | T3 | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|--|----|----|----|
| 50 | Invasion of/through serosa (mesothelium) (visceral peritoneum) | T4 | RE | RE |
| 55 | (50) with [(42) or (45)] | T4 | RE | RE |
| 57 | Adherent to other organs or structures, NOS | T4 | RE | RE |
| 60 | Rectosigmoid: Cul de sac (rectouterine pouch) Pelvic wall Small intestine Rectum: Bladder for males only Cul de sac (rectouterine pouch) Ductus deferens Pelvic wall Prostate Rectovesical fascia for male only Seminal vesicle(s) Skeletal muscle of pelvic floor Vagina | T4 | RE | RE |
| 70 | Rectosigmoid: Bladder Colon via serosa Fallopian tube(s) Ovary(ies) Prostate Ureter(s) Uterus Rectum: Bladder for female only Bone(s) of pelvis Urethra Uterus | T4 | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension | T4 | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

Rectosigmoid, Rectum
CS TS/Ext-Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Rectosigmoid, Rectum
CS Lymph Nodes**

Note 1: Code only regional nodes and nodes, NOS, in this field. Distant nodes are coded in the field Mets at DX.

Note 2: A tumor nodule in the perirectal adipose tissue of a primary carcinoma without histologic evidence of residual lymph node in the nodule is classified as a regional lymph node metastasis if the nodule has the form and smooth contour of a lymph node, or if the contour is not described. If the nodule has an irregular contour, it should be coded in CS Extension as code 45.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Regional lymph node(s): Rectosigmoid: Paracolic/pericolic Perirectal Rectal Nodule(s) or foci in pericolic fat/adjacent mesentery/mesocolic fat Rectum: Perirectal Rectal, NOS Nodule(s) or foci in perirectal fat | * | RN | RN |
| 20 | Regional lymph node(s): Rectosigmoid: Colic, NOS Left colic Hemorrhoidal, superior or middle Inferior mesenteric Middle rectal Sigmoidal (sigmoid mesenteric) Superior rectal Rectum: Hemorrhoidal, superior, middle or inferior Inferior mesenteric Internal iliac (hypogastric) Obturator Rectal, superior, middle, or inferior Sacral, NOS Lateral (laterosacral) Middle (promontorial) (Gerota's node) Presacral Sacral promotory Sigmoidal (sigmoid mesenteric) | * | RN | RN |
| 30 | Mesenteric, NOS Regional lymph node(s), NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS | * | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

* For Lymph Nodes codes 10-80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Reg LN Pos, using the Lymph Nodes Number Positive Table for this site:

Rectosigmoid, Rectum
CS Reg Nodes Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Rectosigmoid, Rectum
Reg LN Pos
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Rectosigmoid, Rectum
Reg LN Exam
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Rectosigmoid, Rectum
CS Mets at DX

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s), NOS | M1 | D | D |
| 11 | Rectosigmoid: Internal iliac (hypogastric) Obturator | M1 | RN | D |
| 12 | Other distant lymph node(s), including external iliac or common iliac | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) codes 10-12 Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (40) + any of [(10) to (12)] Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

Rectosigmoid, Rectum
CS Mets Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Rectosigmoid, Rectum

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Carcinoembryonic Antigen (CEA)

Note: The Site-Specific Factors section includes factors that are needed to derive TNM or AJCC stage and also includes items that are considered important but are not needed for AJCC. This includes prognostic and predictive factors and tumor markers. There are many sites for which there are no Site-Specific Factors required at this time.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | Test none done |
| 010 | Positive/elevated |
| 020 | Negative/normal; within normal limits |
| 030 | Borderline; undetermined whether positive or negative |
| 080 | Ordered, but results not in chart |
| 999 | Unknown or no information Not documented in patient record |

Rectosigmoid, Rectum

CS Site-Specific Factor 2

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Rectosigmoid, Rectum

CS Site-Specific Factor 3

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Rectosigmoid, Rectum

CS Site-Specific Factor 4

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Rectosigmoid, Rectum

CS Site-Specific Factor 5

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Rectosigmoid, Rectum
CS Site-Specific Factor 6

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Page left blank

Collaborative Staging Codes

Anus

Anal Canal; Anus, NOS; Other Parts of Rectum

C21.0-C21.2, C21.8

C21.0 Anus, NOS (excludes skin of anus and perianal skin C44.5)

C21.1 Anal canal

C21.2 Cloacogenic zone

C21.8 Overlapping lesion of rectum, anus and anal canal

Note: Skin of anus is coded separately (C44.5).

| | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------|---|
| CS Tumor Size | CS Site-Specific Factor 1 | The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table |
| CS Extension | CS Site-Specific Factor 2 | |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 3 | |
| CS Lymph Nodes | CS Site-Specific Factor 4 | |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 5 | |
| Reg LN Pos | CS Site-Specific Factor 6 | |
| Reg LN Exam | | |
| CS Mets at DX | | |
| CS Mets Eval | | |

Anus

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anus

CS Extension

Note: Codes 60-80 are used for contiguous extension from the site of origin. Discontinuous involvement is coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor confined to mucosa, NOS (including intramucosal, NOS) | * | L | L |
| 11 | Invades lamina propria | * | L | L |
| 12 | Invades muscularis mucosae | * | L | L |
| 16 | Invades submucosa (superficial invasion) | * | L | L |
| 20 | Invades muscularis propria (internal sphincter) | * | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS | * | L | L |
| 40 | Ischiorectal fat/tissue Perianal skin Perirectal skin Rectal mucosa or submucosa Rectal wall Skeletal muscles: Anal sphincter (external) Levator ani Subcutaneous perianal tissue | * | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|----|----|----|
| 60 | Perineum Vulva | T4 | RE | RE |
| 70 | Bladder Pelvic peritoneum Urethra Vagina | T4 | D | D |
| 75 | Broad ligament(s) Cervix uteri Corpus uteri Prostate | T4 | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension | T4 | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

* For codes 10-40 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Anus

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anus

CS Lymph Nodes

Note: Code only regional nodes and nodes, NOS, in this field. Distant nodes are coded in the field Mets at DX.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Unilateral and bilateral: For all subsites: Anorectal Inferior hemorrhoidal Lateral sacral (laterosacral) Perirectal | N1 | RN | RN |
| 20 | Unilateral: For anal canal: Internal iliac (hypogastric) Obturator | N2 | RN | RN |
| 21 | Unilateral: For anus: Internal iliac (hypogastric) Obturator | N2 | D | RN |
| 30 | Unilateral: For anal canal: Superficial inguinal (femoral) | N2 | RN | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|--|----|----|----|
| 31 | Unilateral: For anus: Superficial inguinal (femoral) | N2 | D | RN |
| 40 | (20) + (30) | N2 | RN | RN |
| 41 | (10) + (30) | N3 | RN | RN |
| 42 | (10) + (31) | N3 | D | RN |
| 50 | Bilateral: For anal canal: Internal iliac (hypogastric) Obturator Superficial inguinal (femoral) | N3 | RN | RN |
| 51 | Bilateral: For anus: Internal iliac (hypogastric) Obturator Superficial inguinal (femoral) | N3 | D | RN |
| 60 | Regional lymph node(s), NOS | N1 | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS | N1 | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

Anus

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anus

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anus

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anus

CS Mets at DX

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anus

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anus

CS Site-Specific Factor 1

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Anus

CS Site-Specific Factor 2

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Anus

CS Site-Specific Factor 3

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Anus

CS Site-Specific Factor 4

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Anus

CS Site-Specific Factor 5

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Anus

CS Site-Specific Factor 6

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Site-Specific Surgery Codes

Rectosigmoid

C199

(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)

Code removal/surgical ablation of single or multiple liver metastases under the data item *Surgical Procedure/Other Site* (NAACCR Item #1294)

Codes

00 None; **no surgery** of primary site; **autopsy ONLY**

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS

11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)

12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)

13 Cryosurgery

14 Laser ablation

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10–14

20 **Local tumor excision**, NOS

26 Polypectomy

27 Excisional biopsy

Combination of 20 or 26–27 WITH

21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)

22 Electrocautery

23 Cryosurgery

24 Laser ablation

25 Laser excision

[**SEER Note:** Codes 21 to 25 above combine 20 Local tumor excision, 26 Polypectomy or 27 Excisional biopsy with 21 PDT, 22 Electrocautery, 23 Cryosurgery, 24 Laser ablation, or 25 Laser excision]

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20–27

30 Wedge or segmental resection; partial proctosigmoidectomy, NOS

31 Plus resection of contiguous organs; example: small bowel, bladder

Procedures coded 30 include, but are not limited to:

Anterior resection

Hartmann operation

Low anterior resection (LAR)

Partial colectomy, NOS

Rectosigmoidectomy, NOS

Sigmoidectomy

40 Pull through WITH sphincter preservation (colo-anal anastomosis)

[**SEER Note:** Procedures coded 40 include but are not limited to: Altemeier's operation, Duhamel's operation, Soave's submucosal resection, Swenson's operation, Turnbull's operation]

50 Total proctectomy

[**SEER Note:** Procedures coded 50 include but are not limited to: Abdominoperineal resection (A & P resection), anterior/posterior resection (A/P resection)/Miles' operation, Rankin's operation]

51 Total colectomy

[**SEER Note:** Removal of the colon from cecum to rectosigmoid or portion of rectum]

55 Total colectomy WITH ileostomy, NOS

56 Ileorectal reconstruction

57 Total colectomy WITH other pouch; example: Koch pouch

60 **Total proctocolectomy**, NOS [combination of 50 and 51]

65 Total proctocolectomy WITH ileostomy, NOS

66 Total proctocolectomy WITH ileostomy and pouch

[**SEER Note:** Removal of the colon from cecum to the rectosigmoid junction including the entire rectum.]

70 Colectomy or proctocolectomy resection in continuity with other organs; pelvic exenteration

[**SEER Notes:** Procedures that may be part of an en bloc resection include, but are not limited to: an oophorectomy and a rectal mucosectomy. Code 70 includes any colectomy (partial, hemicolectomy or total) with an en bloc resection of any other organs. There may be partial or total removal of other organs in continuity with the primary. In continuity with or “en bloc” means that all of the tissues were removed during the same procedure, but not necessarily in a single specimen]

80 Colectomy, NOS; Proctectomy, NOS

90 Surgery, NOS

99 **Unknown** if surgery performed; **death certificate** ONLY

Site-Specific Surgery Codes

Rectum

C209

(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)

Code removal/surgical ablation of single or multiple liver metastases under the data item *Surgical Procedure/Other Site* (NAACCR Item #1294)

Codes

00 None; **no surgery** of primary site; **autopsy** ONLY

10 **Local tumor destruction, NOS**

- 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
- 13 Cryosurgery
- 14 Laser

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10-14

20 **Local tumor excision, NOS**

- 27 Excisional biopsy
- 26 Polypectomy

Any **combination** of **20** or **26–27** WITH

- 21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 22 Electrocautery
- 23 Cryosurgery
- 24 Laser ablation
- 25 Laser excision
- 28 Curette and fulguration

[**SEER Note:** Codes 21 to 25 and 28 above combine 20 Local tumor excision, 26 Polypectomy or 27 Excisional biopsy with 21 PDT, 22 Electrocautery, 23 Cryosurgery, 24 Laser ablation, 25 Laser excision, or 28 Curette and fulguration]

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20–28

30 **Wedge or segmental resection;** partial proctectomy, NOS

Procedures coded 30 include, but are not limited to:

- Anterior resection
- Hartmann's operation
- Low anterior resection (LAR)
- Transsacral rectosigmoidectomy

40 Pull through WITH sphincter preservation (colo-anal anastomosis)

[**SEER Note:** Procedures coded 40 include but are not limited to: Altemeier's operation, Duhamel's operation, Soave's submucosal resection, Swenson's operation, Turnbull's operation]

50 Total proctectomy

Procedure coded 50 includes, but is not limited to: Abdominoperineal resection (Miles Procedure)

[**SEER Note:** Also called A & P resection, anterior/posterior (A/P) resection/Miles' operation, Rankin's operation]

60 Total proctocolectomy, NOS

70 Proctectomy or proctocolectomy with resection in continuity with other organs; pelvic exenteration

[**SEER Note:** In continuity with or "en bloc" means that all of the tissues were removed during the same procedure, but not necessarily in a single specimen]

80 Proctectomy, NOS

90 Surgery, NOS

99 **Unknown** if surgery performed; **death certificate ONLY**

Site-Specific Surgery Codes

Anus

C210–C218

(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)

Codes

00 None; **no surgery** of primary site; **autopsy ONLY**

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS

- 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
- 13 Cryosurgery
- 14 Laser
- 15 Thermal ablation

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10–15

20 Local tumor excision, NOS

- 26 Polypectomy
- 27 Excisional biopsy

Any **combination** of 20 or 26–27 WITH

- 21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 22 Electrocautery
- 23 Cryosurgery
- 24 Laser ablation
- 25 Laser excision

[**SEER Note:** Codes 21 to 25 above combine 20 Local tumor excision, 26 Polypectomy or 27 Excisional biopsy with 21 PDT, 22 Electrocautery, 23 Cryosurgery, 24 Laser ablation, or 25 Laser excision]

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20–27

[**SEER Note:** Margins of resection may have microscopic involvement]

60 Abdominal perineal resection, NOS (APR; Miles procedure)

- 61 APR and sentinel node excision
- 62 APR and unilateral inguinal lymph node dissection
- 63 APR and bilateral inguinal lymph node dissection

The lymph node dissection should also be coded under *Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery* (NAACCR Item # 1292).

90 Surgery, NOS

99 **Unknown** if surgery performed; **death certificate ONLY**

Page left blank

Collaborative Staging Codes

Liver and Intrahepatic Bile Ducts

C22.0-C22.1

C22.0 Liver

C22.1 Intrahepatic bile duct

| | | |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|---|
| CS Tumor Size | CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - | The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table |
| CS Extension | Alpha Fetoprotein (AFP) | |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - | |
| CS Lymph Nodes | Fibrosis Score | |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 3 | |
| Reg LN Pos | CS Site-Specific Factor 4 | |
| Reg LN Exam | CS Site-Specific Factor 5 | |
| CS Mets at DX | CS Site-Specific Factor 6 | |
| CS Mets Eval | | |

Liver and Intrahepatic Bile Ducts

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Liver and Intrahepatic Bile Ducts

CS Extension

Note 1: In codes 30, 40, and 65, "multiple (satellite) nodules/tumors" includes satellitosis, multifocal tumors, and intrahepatic metastases.

Note 2: Major vascular invasion (code 63) is defined as invasion of the branches of the main portal vein (right or left portal vein, not including sectoral or segmental branches) or as invasion of one or more of the three hepatic veins (right, middle, or left). Invasion of hepatic artery or vein is coded to 66.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 10 | Single lesion (one lobe) WITHOUT intrahepatic vascular invasion, including vascular invasion not stated | T1 | L | L |
| 20 | Single lesion (one lobe) WITH intrahepatic vascular invasion | T2 | L | L |
| 30 | Multiple (satellite) nodules/tumors (one lobe) WITHOUT intrahepatic vascular invasion, including vascular invasion not stated | * | L | L |
| 40 | Multiple (satellite) nodules/tumors (one lobe) WITH intrahepatic vascular invasion | * | L | L |
| 50 | Confined to liver, NOS Localized, NOS | T1 | L | L |
| 51 | More than one lobe involved by contiguous growth (single lesion) WITHOUT vascular invasion, including vascular invasion not stated | T1 | RE | RE |
| 52 | More than one lobe involved by contiguous growth (single lesion) WITH vascular invasion | T2 | RE | RE |
| 53 | Extension to gallbladder, extent within liver not stated | T1 | RE | RE |
| 54 | Single lesion with extension to gallbladder + [(10) or (51)] | T1 | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|----|----|----|
| 55 | Single lesion with extension to gallbladder + [(20) or (52)] | T2 | RE | RE |
| 56 | Extension to gallbladder + [(30) or (40)] | * | RE | RE |
| 58 | Extrahepatic bile ducts | T2 | RE | RE |
| 63 | Major vascular invasion: major branch(es) of portal or hepatic vein(s) (see Note 2) | T3 | RE | RE |
| 64 | Direct extension/perforation of visceral peritoneum | T4 | RE | RE |
| 65 | Multiple (satellite) nodules/tumors in more than one lobe of liver or on surface of parenchyma Satellite nodules, NOS | * | D | RE |
| 66 | Extension to hepatic artery or vena cava | T4 | RE | RE |
| 70 | Diaphragm | T4 | RE | RE |
| 75 | Lesser omentum Ligament(s): Coronary Falciform Round [of liver] Hepatoduodenal Hepatogastric Triangular Parietal peritoneum | T4 | RE | RE |
| 76 | (65) + any of [(64) or (66) or (70) or (75)] | T4 | D | RE |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension: Pancreas Pleura Stomach Other contiguous extension | T4 | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

* For Extension codes 30, 40, 56, and 65 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Liver and Intrahepatic Bile Ducts

CS TS/Ext-Eval

| Code | Description | Staging Basis |
|------|---|---------------|
| 0 | No surgical resection done. Evaluation based on physical examination, imaging examination, or other non-invasive clinical evidence. No autopsy evidence used. | c |
| 1 | No surgical resection done. Evaluation based on endoscopic examination, diagnostic biopsy, including fine needle aspiration biopsy, or other invasive techniques including surgical observation without biopsy. No autopsy evidence used. | p |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | No surgical resection done, but evidence derived from autopsy (tumor was suspected or diagnosed prior to autopsy) | p |
| 3 | Surgical resection performed WITHOUT pre-surgical systemic treatment or radiation OR surgical resection performed, unknown if pre-surgical systemic treatment or radiation performed. Evidence acquired before treatment, supplemented or modified by the additional evidence acquired during and from surgery, particularly from pathologic examination of the resected specimen | p |
| 5 | Surgical resection performed WITH pre-surgical systemic treatment or radiation, BUT tumor size/extension based on clinical evidence | c |
| 6 | Surgical resection performed WITH pre-surgical systemic treatment or radiation; tumor size/extension based on pathologic evidence | y |
| 8 | Evidence from autopsy only (tumor was unsuspected or undiagnosed prior to autopsy) | a |
| 9 | Unknown if surgical resection done Not assessed; cannot be assessed Unknown if assessed Not documented in patient record | c |

Liver and Intrahepatic Bile Ducts

CS Lymph Nodes

Note: Code only regional nodes and nodes, NOS, in this field. Distant nodes are coded in the field Mets at DX.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Regional lymph node(s): Hepatic NOS: Hepatic artery Hepatic pedicle Inferior vena cava Porta hepatis (hilar) [in hilus of liver] Hepatoduodenal ligament Periportal Portal vein Regional lymph node(s), NOS | N1 | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS | N1 | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

Liver and Intrahepatic Bile Ducts
CS Reg Nodes Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Liver and Intrahepatic Bile Ducts
Reg LN Pos
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Liver and Intrahepatic Bile Ducts
Reg LN Exam
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Liver and Intrahepatic Bile Ducts
CS Mets at DX

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s), NOS | M1 | D | D |
| 11 | Distant lymph node(s): Cardiac Lateral (aortic) (lumbar) Pericardial (pericardiac) Posterior mediastinal (tracheoesophageal) including juxtaphrenic nodes Retroperitoneal, NOS | M1 | RN | D |
| 12 | Distant lymph node(s): Coronary artery Renal artery | M1 | RN | D |
| 13 | Distant lymph node(s): Aortic (para-, peri-) Diaphragmatic, NOS Peripancreatic (near head of pancreas only) | M1 | D | D |
| 15 | Distant lymph node(s) other than codes 10-13, including inferior phrenic nodes | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastasis except distant lymph node(s) (codes 10-15) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (40) + any of [(10) or (11) or (15)] Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 52 | (40) + [(12) or (13)] Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

Liver and Intrahepatic Bile Ducts
CS Mets Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Liver and Intrahepatic Bile Ducts
CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Alpha Fetoprotein (AFP)

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | Test not done |
| 010 | Positive/elevated |
| 020 | Negative/normal; within normal limits |
| 030 | Borderline; undetermined whether positive or negative |
| 080 | Ordered, but results not in chart |
| 999 | Unknown or no information Not documented in patient record |

Liver and Intrahepatic Bile Ducts
CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Fibrosis Score

Note: AJCC classifies fibrosis scores 0-4 (none to moderate fibrosis) as F0, and fibrosis scores 5-6 (severe fibrosis or cirrhosis) as F1. Fibrosis score is also called Ishak score.

| Code | Description |
|------|---|
| 000 | F0: Fibrosis score 0-4 (none to moderate fibrosis) |
| 001 | F1: Fibrosis score 5-6 (severe fibrosis or cirrhosis) |
| 999 | Fibrosis score not recorded Insufficient information Not documented in patient record |

Liver and Intrahepatic Bile Ducts
CS Site-Specific Factor 3

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Liver and Intrahepatic Bile Ducts
CS Site-Specific Factor 4

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Liver and Intrahepatic Bile Ducts

CS Site-Specific Factor 5

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Liver and Intrahepatic Bile Ducts

CS Site-Specific Factor 6

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Site-Specific Surgery Codes
Liver and Intrahepatic Bile Ducts
C220–C221

(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)

Codes

00 None; **no surgery** of primary site; **autopsy ONLY**

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS

- 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
- 13 Cryosurgery
- 14 Laser
- 15 Alcohol (Percutaneous Ethanol Injection-PEI)
- 16 Heat-Radio-frequency ablation (RFA)
- 17 Other (ultrasound, acetic acid)

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10–17

[**SEER Note:** Code 15 Alcohol (Percutaneous Ethanol Injection-PEI) can also be described as an “intratumoral injection of alcohol” or “alcohol ablation”]

20 Wedge or segmental resection, NOS

- 21 Wedge resection
- 22 Segmental resection, NOS
- 23 One
- 24 Two
- 25 Three
- 26 Segmental resection AND local tumor destruction

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20–26

30 Lobectomy, NOS

- 36 Right lobectomy
- 37 Left lobectomy
- 38 Lobectomy AND local tumor destruction

[**SEER Note:** Code 30 also referred to as simple lobectomy]

50 **Extended lobectomy**, NOS (extended: resection of a single lobe plus a segment of another lobe)

- 51 Right lobectomy
- 52 Left lobectomy
- 59 Extended lobectomy AND local tumor destruction

60 Hepatectomy, NOS

- 61 Total hepatectomy and **transplant**

65 **Excision of a bile duct** (for an intrahepatic bile duct primary only)

- 66 Excision of a bile duct PLUS partial hepatectomy

75 Bile duct and hepatectomy WITH transplant

90 Surgery, NOS

99 **Unknown** if surgery performed; **death certificate ONLY**

Page left blank

Collaborative Staging Codes

Gallbladder

C23.9

C23.9 Gallbladder

| | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------|---|
| CS Tumor Size | CS Site-Specific Factor 1 | The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage |
| CS Extension | CS Site-Specific Factor 2 | |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 3 | |
| CS Lymph Nodes | CS Site-Specific Factor 4 | |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 5 | |
| Reg LN Pos | CS Site-Specific Factor 6 | |
| Reg LN Exam | | |
| CS Mets at DX | | |
| CS Mets Eval | | |

Gallbladder

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gallbladder

CS Extension

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-------|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; non-invasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor confined to: Lamina propria Mucosa, NOS Submucosa (superficial invasion) | T1a | L | L |
| 20 | Muscularis propria | T1b | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS | T1NOS | L | L |
| 40 | Perimuscular connective tissue | T2 | RE | RE |
| 50 | Invasion of/through serosa (visceral peritoneum) | T3 | L | RE |
| 55 | (40) + (50) | T3 | RE | RE |
| 60 | Extension into liver, NOS | T3 | RE | RE |
| 61 | Extension into liver less than or equal to 2 cm | T3 | RE | RE |
| 62 | Extension to ONE of the following: Ampulla of Vater Duodenum Extrahepatic bile duct(s) Omentum, NOS Greater Lesser Pancreas Small intestine, NOS | T3 | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|----|----|----|
| 65 | Extension to ONE of the following WITHOUT extension to any structure in (62): Colon Stomach | T3 | RE | RE |
| 66 | Extension to cystic artery/vein WITHOUT extension to any structure in [(62) to (65)] | T3 | RE | D |
| 67 | [(60) or (61)] PLUS extension to ONE structure in codes [(62) to (65)] | T3 | RE | RE |
| 68 | (66) + [(60) or (61)] | T3 | RE | D |
| 71 | Extension into liver greater than 2 cm WITHOUT extension to any structure in codes [(62) to (66)] | T3 | D | D |
| 72 | Extension into liver greater than 2 cm PLUS extension to ONE structure in codes [(62) to (66)] | T3 | D | D |
| 73 | Extension to two or more structures in codes [(62) to (66)], WITH or WITHOUT extension into liver of any depth | T4 | D | D |
| 75 | Extension to: Hepatic artery Portal vein | T4 | RE | D |
| 78 | (75) + any of [(60) to (73)] | T4 | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension, including: Abdominal wall Diaphragm | T4 | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

Gallbladder

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gallbladder

CS Lymph Nodes

Note: Code only regional nodes and nodes, NOS, in this field. Distant nodes are coded in the field Mets at DX. Also note that celiac and superior mesenteric nodes are listed in this field rather than Mets at DX, because AJCC classifies them as N1 and not M1.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Regional lymph node(s): Cystic duct (Calot's node) Node of foramen of Winslow (omental) (epiploic) Pericholedochal (common bile duct) | N1 | RN | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|--|----|----|----|
| 11 | Regional lymph node(s): Porta hepatis (portal) (periportal) (hilar) (in hilus of liver) | N1 | D | RN |
| 20 | Regional lymph node(s): Pancreaticoduodenal | N1 | RN | RN |
| 21 | Regional lymph node(s): Periduodenal Peripancreatic (near head of pancreas only) | N1 | D | RN |
| 25 | (11) + (20) | N1 | D | RN |
| 30 | Regional lymph node(s), NOS | N1 | RN | RN |
| 50 | Celiac lymph node(s) | N1 | D | RN |
| 60 | Superior mesenteric lymph node(s) | N1 | D | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS | N1 | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

Gallbladder

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gallbladder

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gallbladder

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gallbladder

CS Mets at DX

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s), including: Para-aortic Peripancreatic (along body and tail of pancreas only) Distant lymph node(s), NOS | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|--|----|---|---|
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |
|----|--|----|---|---|

Gallbladder

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gallbladder

CS Site-Specific Factor 1

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Gallbladder

CS Site-Specific Factor 2

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Gallbladder

CS Site-Specific Factor 3

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Gallbladder

CS Site-Specific Factor 4

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Gallbladder

CS Site-Specific Factor 5

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Gallbladder

CS Site-Specific Factor 6

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Collaborative Staging Codes

Extrahepatic Bile Duct(s)

C24.0

C24.0 Extrahepatic bile duct

| | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------|---|
| CS Tumor Size | CS Site-Specific Factor 1 | The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage |
| CS Extension | CS Site-Specific Factor 2 | |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 3 | |
| CS Lymph Nodes | CS Site-Specific Factor 4 | |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 5 | |
| Reg LN Pos | CS Site-Specific Factor 6 | |
| Reg LN Exam | | |
| CS Mets at DX | | |
| CS Mets Eval | | |

Extrahepatic Bile Duct(s)

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Extrahepatic Bile Duct(s)

CS Extension

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; non-invasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor of extrahepatic bile duct(s) (choledochal, common, cystic, and hepatic) confined to: Lamina propria Mucosa, NOS Submucosa (superficial invasion) | T1 | L | L |
| 20 | Muscularis propria | T1 | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS | T1 | L | L |
| 40 | Beyond wall of bile duct Periductal/fibromuscular connective tissue | T2 | RE | RE |
| 60 | Gallbladder Liver, porta hepatis Pancreas | T3 | RE | RE |
| 61 | Unilateral branches of hepatic artery (right or left) Unilateral branches of portal vein (right or left) | T3 | RE | RE |
| 65 | Colon, NOS Transverse including flexure Duodenum, NOS Omentum, NOS Lesser Stomach, distal | T4 | RE | RE |
| 66 | Common hepatic artery Hepatic artery, NOS Main main portal vein or its branches bilaterally Portal vein, NOS | T4 | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|----|---|----|
| 70 | Other parts of colon Greater omentum Stomach, proximal | T4 | D | RE |
| 75 | Abdominal wall | T4 | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension | T4 | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

Extrahepatic Bile Duct(s)

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Extrahepatic Bile Duct(s)

CS Lymph Nodes

Note: Code only regional nodes and nodes, NOS, in this field.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 15 | Regional lymph node(s): Cystic duct (node of the neck of the gallbladder) (Calot's node) Hepatic Hilar (in the hepatoduodenal ligament) Node of the foramen of Winslow (omental) (epiploic) Pancreaticoduodenal Pericholedochal (node around common bile duct) Periduodenal Peripancreatic (near head of pancreas only) Periportal Porta hepatis (portal) (hilar) (in hilus of liver) Regional lymph node(s), NOS | N1 | RN | RN |
| 35 | Regional lymph node(s): Celiac Superior mesenteric | N1 | D | D |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS | N1 | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

**Extrahepatic Bile Duct(s)
CS Reg Nodes Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Extrahepatic Bile Duct(s)
Reg LN Pos
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Extrahepatic Bile Duct(s)
Reg LN Exam
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Extrahepatic Bile Duct(s)
CS Mets at DX**

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s) including: Para-aortic Peripancreatic (along body and tail of pancreas only) Distant lymph node(s), NOS | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastases, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patientrecord | MX | U | U |

**Extrahepatic Bile Duct(s)
CS Mets Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Extrahepatic Bile Duct(s)
CS Site-Specific Factor 1**

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

**Extrahepatic Bile Duct(s)
CS Site-Specific Factor 2**

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

**Extrahepatic Bile Duct(s)
CS Site-Specific Factor 3**

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

**Extrahepatic Bile Duct(s)
CS Site-Specific Factor 4**

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

**Extrahepatic Bile Duct(s)
CS Site-Specific Factor 5**

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

**Extrahepatic Bile Duct(s)
CS Site-Specific Factor 6**

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Collaborative Staging Codes

Ampulla of Vater

C24.1

C24.1 Ampulla of Vater

| | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------|---|
| CS Tumor Size | CS Site-Specific Factor 1 | The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage |
| CS Extension | CS Site-Specific Factor 2 | |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 3 | |
| CS Lymph Nodes | CS Site-Specific Factor 4 | |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 5 | |
| Reg LN Pos | CS Site-Specific Factor 6 | |
| Reg LN Exam | | |
| CS Mets at DX | | |
| CS Mets Eval | | |

Ampulla of Vater

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Ampulla of Vater

CS Extension

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; non-invasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor confined/limited to ampulla of Vater or extending to sphincter of Oddi | T1 | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS | T1 | L | L |
| 42 | Duodenal wall | T2 | RE | RE |
| 52 | Pancreas | T3 | RE | RE |
| 62 | Common bile duct | T4 | RE | RE |
| 65 | Extrahepatic bile ducts other than common bile duct or sphincter of Oddi | T4 | RE | RE |
| 70 | Extension to other adjacent organs or tissues: Blood vessels(major): Hepatic artery Portal vein Gallbladder Hepatic flexure Lesser omentum Liver including porta hepatis Peripancreatic soft tissues Stomach, NOS: Distal Transverse colon | T4 | RE | RE |
| 75 | Stomach, proximal | T4 | RE | D |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|----|---|---|
| 80 | Further contiguous extension Other adjacent organs | T4 | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

Ampulla of Vater

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Ampulla of Vater

CS Lymph Nodes

Note 1: Code only regional nodes and nodes, NOS, in this field. Distant nodes are coded in the field Mets at DX.

Note 2: Splenic lymph nodes and those located at the tail of the pancreas are not considered regional and should be coded under Mets at DX.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Regional lymph node(s): Hepatic Hepatic artery Node of the foramen of Winslow (epiploic) (omental) Pancreaticoduodenal Peripancreatic (except at tail of pancreas, see CS Mets at DX) Periportal Lymph node(s): Anterior to the ampulla of Vater Inferior to the ampulla of Vater Posterior to the ampulla of Vater Superior to the ampulla of Vater Regional lymph node(s), NOS | N1 | RN | RN |
| 11 | Regional lymph node(s): Celiac Infrapyloric (subpyloric) Lateral aortic (lumbar) Proximal mesenteric Retroperitoneal Superior mesenteric | N1 | D | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS | N1 | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

Ampulla of Vater
CS Reg Nodes Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Ampulla of Vater
Reg LN Pos
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Ampulla of Vater
Reg LN Exam
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Ampulla of Vater
CS Mets at DX

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s) Node(s) at the tail of the pancreas Para-aortic Splenic lymph node(s) Distant lymph node(s), NOS | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Carcinomatosis Distant metastasis, NOS (Includes seeding of peritoneum, even if limited to the lesser sac region; positive peritoneal cytology) | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patientrecord | MX | U | U |

Ampulla of Vater
CS Mets Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Ampulla of Vater
CS Site-Specific Factor 1

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

**Ampulla of Vater
CS Site-Specific Factor 2**

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

**Ampulla of Vater
CS Site-Specific Factor 3**

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

**Ampulla of Vater
CS Site-Specific Factor 4**

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

**Ampulla of Vater
CS Site-Specific Factor 5**

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

**Ampulla of Vater
CS Site-Specific Factor 6**

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

**Collaborative Staging Codes
Other Biliary and Biliary, NOS
C24.8-C24.9**

C24.8 Overlapping lesion of biliary tract (neoplasms involving both intrahepatic and extrahepatic bile ducts)
C24.9 Biliary tract, NOS

| | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------|---|
| CS Tumor Size | CS Site-Specific Factor 1 | The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage |
| CS Extension | CS Site-Specific Factor 2 | |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 3 | |
| CS Lymph Nodes | CS Site-Specific Factor 4 | |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 5 | |
| Reg LN Pos | CS Site-Specific Factor 6 | |
| Reg LN Exam | | |
| CS Mets at DX | | |
| CS Mets Eval | | |

**Other Biliary and Biliary, NOS
CS Tumor Size
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Other Biliary and Biliary, NOS
CS Extension**

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; non-invasive; intraepithelial | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasive tumor confined to: Lamina propria Mucosa, NOS Submucosa (superficial invasion) | T1 | L | L |
| 20 | Muscularis propria | T1 | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS Tumor confined to bile duct | T1 | L | L |
| 40 | Perimuscular connective tissue Tumor invades beyond the wall of the bile duct | T2 | RE | RE |
| 50 | Invasion of/through serosa | T2 | L | RE |
| 55 | (40) + (50) | T2 | RE | RE |
| 60 | Extension into liver, NOS | T3 | RE | RE |
| 61 | Extension into liver less than or equal to 2 cm | T3 | RE | RE |
| 62 | Extension to ONE of the following: Ampulla of Vater Omentum, NOS Greater Lesser Pancreas Small intestine, NOS | T3 | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|----|----|----|
| 63 | Gallbladder Unilateral branches of the right or left portal vein Unilateral branches of the right or left hepatic artery | T3 | RE | RE |
| 65 | Extension to ONE of the following: Colon Stomach | T4 | D | D |
| 66 | Abdominal wall Duodenum | T4 | RE | RE |
| 70 | Extension into liver greater than 2 cm Extension to two or more adjacent organs listed in codes [(60) to (63)] | T3 | D | D |
| 71 | Extension to two or more adjacent organs any of which are in codes [(65) to (66)] | T4 | D | D |
| 75 | Common hepatic artery Cystic artery/vein Hepatic artery, NOS Portal vein or its branches bilaterally Portal vein, NOS | T4 | RE | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension | T4 | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

Other Biliary and Biliary, NOS

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Biliary and Biliary, NOS

CS Lymph Nodes

Note: Code only regional nodes and nodes, NOS, in this field. Distant nodes are coded in the field Mets at DX.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Regional lymph node(s): Cystic duct (Calot's node) Node of foramen of Winslow (epiploic) (omental) Pericholedochal (common bile duct) | N1 | RN | RN |
| 11 | Regional lymph node(s): Porta hepatis (portal) (hilar) [in hilus of liver] | N1 | D | RN |
| 20 | Regional lymph node(s): Pancreaticoduodenal Periportal | N1 | RN | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|--|----|----|----|
| 21 | Regional lymph node(s): Periduodenal Peripancreatic (near head of pancreas only) | N1 | D | RN |
| 30 | Regional lymph node(s), NOS | N1 | RN | RN |
| 50 | Celiac | N1 | D | RN |
| 60 | Superior mesenteric | N1 | D | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS | N1 | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

Other Biliary and Biliary, NOS

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Biliary and Biliary, NOS

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Biliary and Biliary, NOS

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Biliary and Biliary, NOS

CS Mets at DX

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s) including: Para-aortic | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastases, NOS Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

Other Biliary and Biliary, NOS
CS Mets Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Biliary and Biliary, NOS
CS Site-Specific Factor 1

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Other Biliary and Biliary, NOS
CS Site-Specific Factor 2

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Other Biliary and Biliary, NOS
CS Site-Specific Factor 3

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Other Biliary and Biliary, NOS
CS Site-Specific Factor 4

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Other Biliary and Biliary, NOS
CS Site-Specific Factor 5

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Other Biliary and Biliary, NOS
CS Site-Specific Factor 6

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Site-Specific Surgery Codes

All Other Sites

C142–C148, C170–C179, **C239, C240–C249**, C260–C269, C300–C301, C310–C319, C339, C379, C380–C388, C390–C399, C480–C488, C510–C519, C529, C570–C579, C589, C600–C609, C630–C639, C680–C689, C690–C699, C740–C749, C750–C759

(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)

Codes

00 None; **no surgery** of primary site; **autopsy ONLY**

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS

11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)

12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)

13 Cryosurgery

14 Laser

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10–14

20 **Local tumor excision**, NOS

26 Polypectomy

27 Excisional biopsy

Any **combination** of **20** or **26–27** WITH

21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)

22 Electrocautery

23 Cryosurgery

24 Laser ablation

25 Laser excision

[**SEER Note:** Codes 21 to 25 above combine 20 local tumor excision, 26 Polypectomy or 27 Excisional biopsy with 21 PDT, 22 Electrocautery, 23 Cryosurgery, 24 Laser ablation, or 25 Laser excision]

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20–27

30 Simple/partial surgical removal of primary site

40 **Total surgical removal** of primary site; enucleation

41 Total enucleation (for eye surgery only)

50 Surgery stated to be “**debulking**”

60 Radical surgery

Partial or total removal of the primary site WITH a resection in continuity (partial or total removal) with other organs

[**SEER Note:** In continuity with or “en bloc” means that all of the tissues were removed during the same procedure, but not necessarily in a single specimen]

90 Surgery, NOS

99 **Unknown** if surgery performed; **death certificate ONLY**

Page left blank

Collaborative Staging Codes

Pancreas: Head

C25.0

C25.0 Head of pancreas

Note: For tumors of the islet cells, determine which subsite of the pancreas is involved and use that primary site code and the corresponding Collaborative Stage scheme. If the subsite cannot be determined, use the general code for Islets of Langerhans, C25.4, and use the Collaborative Stage scheme for Pancreas, Other and Unspecified.

| | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------|---|
| CS Tumor Size | CS Site-Specific Factor 1 | The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table |
| CS Extension | CS Site-Specific Factor 2 | |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 3 | |
| CS Lymph Nodes | CS Site-Specific Factor 4 | |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 5 | |
| Reg LN Pos | CS Site-Specific Factor 6 | |
| Reg LN Exam | | |
| CS Mets at DX | | |
| CS Mets Eval | | |

Pancreas: Head

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pancreas: Head

CS Extension

Note 1: Islets of Langerhans are distributed throughout the pancreas, and therefore any extension code can be used.

Note 2: Codes 40-80 are used for contiguous extension of tumor from the site of origin. Discontinuous involvement is coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; non-invasive PanIn III Pancreatic Intraepithelial Neoplasia III | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Confined to pancreas | * | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS | * | L | L |
| 40 | Extension to peripancreatic tissue, NOS Fixation to adjacent structures, NOS | T3 | RE | RE |
| 44 | Ampulla of Vater Duodenum Extrahepatic bile duct(s) | T3 | RE | RE |
| 50 | Adjacent stomach Stomach, NOS | T3 | RE | RE |
| 54 | Blood vessel(s) (major): Gastroduodenal artery Hepatic artery Pancreaticoduodenal artery Portal vein Superior mesenteric vein Transverse colon, including hepatic flexure | T3 | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|----|----|----|
| 55 | Mesenteric fat Mesentery Mesocolon Peritoneum | T3 | RE | D |
| 57 | Gallbladder | T3 | RE | D |
| 58 | Body of stomach | T3 | D | RE |
| 59 | (58) + [(55) or (57)] | T3 | D | D |
| 60 | Tumor is inseparable from the superior mesenteric artery Superior mesenteric artery | T4 | RE | RE |
| 61 | Omentum | T4 | RE | D |
| 63 | Liver (including porta hepatis) | T4 | RE | D |
| 65 | (60) + [(55) or (57)] | T4 | RE | D |
| 66 | (60) + (58) | T4 | D | RE |
| 67 | (60 + 59) OR any of [(61 to 65)] + [(58) or (59)] OR (66) + any of [(55) or (57) or (59) or (61) or (63) or (65)] | T4 | D | D |
| 68 | Tumor is inseparable from the celiac axis Aorta Celiac artery | T4 | D | D |
| 69 | Colon (other than transverse colon including hepatic flexure) Spleen | T4 | D | D |
| 78 | Adrenal (suprarenal) gland Ileum Jejunum Kidney Retroperitoneum Ureter | T4 | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension | T4 | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

* For Extension codes 10 and 30 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Pancreas: Head
CS TS/Ext-Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Pancreas: Head
CS Lymph Nodes**

Note: Code only regional nodes and nodes, NOS, in this field. Distant nodes are coded in the field Mets at DX.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Regional lymph node(s): Celiac Gastroepiploic (gastro-omental), left Hepatic Infrapyloric (subpyloric) Lateral aortic (lumbar) Peripancreatic, NOS: Anterior, NOS: Anterior pancreaticoduodenal Anterior proximal mesenteric Pyloric Inferior to the head and body of pancreas Posterior, NOS: Pericholedochal (common bile duct) Posterior pancreaticoduodenal Posterior proximal mesentery Superior to the head and body of pancreas Retroperitoneal Superior mesenteric Regional lymph node(s), NOS | N1 | RN | RN |
| 20 | Pancreaticosplenic (pancreaticolienal) Splenic (lienal), NOS Superior hilum Suprapancreatic | N1 | D | D |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS | N1 | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

Pancreas: Head

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pancreas: Head

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pancreas: Head

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pancreas: Head

CS Mets at DX

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s) | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS (includes seeding of peritoneum, even if limited to the lesser sac region; positive peritoneal cytology) Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

Pancreas: Head

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pancreas: Head

CS Site-Specific Factor 1

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Pancreas: Head

CS Site-Specific Factor 2

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Pancreas: Head

CS Site-Specific Factor 3

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Pancreas: Head

CS Site-Specific Factor 4

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Pancreas: Head

CS Site-Specific Factor 5

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Pancreas: Head

CS Site-Specific Factor 6

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Page left blank

Collaborative Staging Codes

Pancreas: Body and Tail

C25.1-C25.2

C25.1 Body of pancreas

C25.2 Tail of pancreas

Note: For tumors of the islet cells, determine which subsite of the pancreas is involved and use that primary site code and corresponding the Collaborative Stage scheme. If the subsite cannot be determined, use the general code for Islets of Langerhans, C25.4, and use the Collaborative Stage scheme for Pancreas, Other and Unspecified.

| | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------|---|
| CS Tumor Size | CS Site-Specific Factor 1 | The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table |
| CS Extension | CS Site-Specific Factor 2 | |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 3 | |
| CS Lymph Nodes | CS Site-Specific Factor 4 | |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 5 | |
| Reg LN Pos | CS Site-Specific Factor 6 | |
| Reg LN Exam | | |
| CS Mets at DX | | |
| CS Mets Eval | | |

Pancreas: Body and Tail

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pancreas: Body and Tail

CS Extension

Note 1: Islets of Langerhans are distributed throughout the pancreas, and therefore any extension code can be used.

Note 2: Codes 40-80 are used for contiguous extension of tumor from the site of origin. Discontinuous involvement is coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; non-invasive PanIn III Pancreatic Intraepithelial Neoplasia III | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Confined to pancreas | * | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS | * | L | L |
| 40 | Extension to peripancreatic tissue, NOS Fixation to adjacent structures, NOS | T3 | RE | RE |
| 44 | Duodenum | T3 | RE | RE |
| 48 | Ampulla of Vater Extrahepatic bile duct(s) | T3 | RE | RE |
| 50 | Spleen | T3 | RE | RE |
| 56 | Blood vessel(s): Hepatic artery Portal vein Splenic artery/vein Superior mesenteric vein Splenic flexure of colon | T3 | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|----|----|----|
| 57 | Kidney, NOS Left adrenal (suprarenal) gland Left kidney Left ureter | T3 | RE | D |
| 58 | Mesenteric fat Mesentery Mesocolon Peritoneum | T3 | RE | D |
| 59 | Retroperitoneal soft tissue (retroperitoneal space) | T3 | D | D |
| 60 | Tumor is inseparable from the celiac axis or superior mesenteric artery Aorta Celiac artery Superior mesenteric artery | T4 | RE | RE |
| 62 | Stomach | T4 | RE | RE |
| 70 | [(60) or (62)] + [(57) or (58)] | T4 | RE | D |
| 71 | Ileum Jejunum | T4 | RE | D |
| 73 | Gallbladder Liver (including porta hepatis) | T4 | RE | D |
| 75 | (59) + any of [(60) or (62) or (71) or (73)] | T4 | D | D |
| 77 | Colon (other than splenic flexure) | T4 | D | D |
| 78 | Diaphragm Right adrenal (suprarenal) gland Right kidney Right ureter | T4 | D | D |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension | T4 | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

* For Extension codes 10 and 30 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Pancreas: Body and Tail
CS TS/Ext-Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pancreas: Body and Tail

CS Lymph Nodes

Note: Code only regional nodes and nodes, NOS, in this field. Distant nodes are coded in the field Mets at DX.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Regional lymph node(s): Hepatic Lateral aortic (lumbar) Pancreaticosplenic (pancreaticolienal) Peripancreatic, NOS: Anterior, NOS: Anterior pancreaticoduodenal Anterior proximal mesenteric Pyloric Inferior to the head and body of pancreas Posterior, NOS: Pericholedochal (common bile duct) Posterior pancreaticoduodenal Posterior proximal mesentery Superior to the head and body of pancreas Retroperitoneal Splenic (lienal) Gastroepiploic Splenic hilum Suprapancreatic Superior mesenteric Regional lymph node(s), NOS | N1 | RN | RN |
| 20 | Regional lymph node(s): Celiac Infrapyloric (subpyloric) | N1 | D | D |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS | N1 | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |

Pancreas: Body and Tail

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pancreas: Body and Tail

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pancreas: Body and Tail

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Pancreas: Body and Tail
CS Mets at DX**

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s) Distant lymph node(s), NOS | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS (includes seeding of peritoneum, even if limited to the lesser sac region; positive peritoneal cytology) Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

**Pancreas: Body and Tail
CS Mets Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Pancreas: Body and Tail
CS Site-Specific Factor 1**

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

**Pancreas: Body and Tail
CS Site-Specific Factor 2**

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

**Pancreas: Body and Tail
CS Site-Specific Factor 3**

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

**Pancreas: Body and Tail
CS Site-Specific Factor 4**

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Pancreas: Body and Tail
CS Site-Specific Factor 5

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Pancreas: Body and Tail
CS Site-Specific Factor 6

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Page left blank

Collaborative Staging Codes

Pancreas: Other and Unspecified

C25.3-C25.4, C25.7-C25.9

C25.3 Pancreatic duct

C25.4 Islets of Langerhans

C25.7 Other specified parts of pancreas

C25.8 Overlapping lesion of pancreas

C25.9 Pancreas, NOS

Note: For tumors of the islet cells, determine which subsite of the pancreas is involved and use that primary site code and the corresponding Collaborative Stage scheme. If the subsite cannot be determined, use the general code for Islets of Langerhans, C25.4, and use the Collaborative Stage scheme for Pancreas, Other and Unspecified.

| | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------|---|
| CS Tumor Size | CS Site-Specific Factor 1 | The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table |
| CS Extension | CS Site-Specific Factor 2 | |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 3 | |
| CS Lymph Nodes | CS Site-Specific Factor 4 | |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 5 | |
| Reg LN Pos | CS Site-Specific Factor 6 | |
| Reg LN Exam | | |
| CS Mets at DX | | |
| CS Mets Eval | | |

Pancreas: Other and Unspecified

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pancreas: Other and Unspecified

CS Extension

Note 1: Islets of Langerhans are distributed throughout the pancreas, and, therefore, any extension code can be used.

Note 2: Codes 40-80 are used for contiguous extension of tumor from the site of origin. Discontinuous involvement is coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; non-invasive PanIn III Pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia III | Tis | IS | IS |
| 10 | Confined to pancreas | * | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS | * | L | L |
| 40 | Peripancreatic tissue | T3 | RE | RE |
| 45 | Ampulla of Vater Duodenum Extra hepatic bile duct(s) | T3 | RE | RE |
| 50 | Adjacent large vessel(s) (except as listed in code 60) Colon Spleen Stomach | T3 | RE | RE |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|---|----|----|----|
| 60 | Tumor is inseparable from the celiac axis or superior mesenteric artery Aorta Celiac artery Superior mesenteric artery | T4 | RE | RE |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension | T4 | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | T0 | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | TX | U | U |

* For Extension codes 10 and 30 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

**Pancreas: Other and Unspecified
CS TS/Ext-Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Pancreas: Other and Unspecified
CS Lymph Nodes**

Note: Code only regional nodes and nodes, NOS, in this field. Distant nodes are coded in the field Mets at DX.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No regional lymph node involvement | N0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Regional lymph node(s): Celiac Hepatic Infrapyloric (subpyloric) Lateral aortic (lumbar) Pancreaticosplenic (pancreaticolienal) Peripancreatic, NOS: Anterior, NOS: Anterior pancreaticoduodenal Anterior proximal mesenteric Pyloric Inferior to the head and body of pancreas Posterior, NOS: Pericholedochal (common bile duct) Posterior pancreaticoduodenal Posterior proximal mesentery Superior to the head and body of pancreas Retroperitoneal Splenic (lienal), NOS Gastroepiploic (gastro-omental), left Splenic hilum Suprapancreatic Superior mesenteric Regional lymph node(s), NOS | N1 | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS | N1 | RN | RN |

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2004, Revision 1

| | | | | |
|----|--|----|---|---|
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NX | U | U |
|----|--|----|---|---|

Pancreas: Other and Unspecified

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pancreas: Other and Unspecified

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pancreas: Other and Unspecified

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pancreas: Other and Unspecified

CS Mets at DX

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | M0 | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s) Distant lymph node(s), NOS | M1 | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS (includes seeding of peritoneum, even if limited to the lesser sac region; positive peritoneal cytology) Carcinomatosis | M1 | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | M1 | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | MX | U | U |

Pancreas: Other and Unspecified

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pancreas: Other and Unspecified

CS Site-Specific Factor 1

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

**Pancreas: Other and Unspecified
CS Site-Specific Factor 2**

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

**Pancreas: Other and Unspecified
CS Site-Specific Factor 3**

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

**Pancreas: Other and Unspecified
CS Site-Specific Factor 4**

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

**Pancreas: Other and Unspecified
CS Site-Specific Factor 5**

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

**Pancreas: Other and Unspecified
CS Site-Specific Factor 6**

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Collaborative Staging Codes
Other and Ill-Defined Digestive Organs
C26.0, C26.8-C26.9

C26.0 Intestinal tract, NOS
 C26.8 Overlapping lesion of digestive system
 C26.9 Gastrointestinal tract, NOS

Note: AJCC does not define TNM staging for this site.

| | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------|---|
| CS Tumor Size | CS Site-Specific Factor 1 | The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histologies for Which AJCC Staging Is Not Generated AJCC Stage |
| CS Extension | CS Site-Specific Factor 2 | |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 3 | |
| CS Lymph Nodes | CS Site-Specific Factor 4 | |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | CS Site-Specific Factor 5 | |
| Reg LN Pos | CS Site-Specific Factor 6 | |
| Reg LN Exam | | |
| CS Mets at DX | | |
| CS Mets Eval | | |

Other and Ill-Defined Digestive Organs
CS Tumor Size
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other and Ill-Defined Digestive Organs
CS Extension

Note 1: Definition of Adjacent Connective Tissue: Some of the schemes for ill-defined or non-specific sites in this manual contain a code 40, adjacent connective tissue, which is defined here as the unnamed tissues that immediately surround an organ or structure containing a primary cancer. Use this code when a tumor has invaded past the outer border (capsule, serosa, or other edge) of the primary organ into the organ's surrounding supportive structures but has not invaded into larger structures or adjacent organs.

Note 2: Definition of Adjacent Structures: Connective tissues large enough to be given a specific name would be considered adjacent structures. For example, the brachial artery has a name, as does the broad ligament. Continuous tumor growth from one organ into an adjacent named structure would be coded to 60 in the schemes for ill-defined or non-specific sites.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | In situ; non-invasive; intraepithelial | NA | IS | IS |
| 10 | Invasion of submucosa | NA | L | L |
| 30 | Localized, NOS | NA | L | L |
| 40 | Adjacent connective tissue (see Note 1) | NA | RE | RE |
| 60 | Adjacent organs/structures (see Note 2) | NA | RE | RE |
| 80 | Further contiguous extension | NA | D | D |
| 95 | No evidence of primary tumor | NA | U | U |
| 99 | Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NA | U | U |

Other and Ill-Defined Digestive Organs

CS TS/Ext-Eval

| Code | Description | Staging Basis |
|------|------------------------------|---------------|
| 9 | Not applicable for this site | NA |

Other and Ill-Defined Digestive Organs

CS Lymph Nodes

Note: Code only regional nodes and nodes, NOS, in this field. Distant nodes are coded in the field Mets at DX.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | None; no regional lymph node involvement | NA | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Regional lymph node(s) Intra-abdominal Paracaval Pelvic Subdiaphragmatic Regional lymph node(s), NOS | NA | RN | RN |
| 80 | Lymph nodes, NOS | NA | RN | RN |
| 99 | Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NA | U | U |

Other and Ill-Defined Digestive Organs

CS Reg Nodes Eval

| Code | Description | Staging Basis |
|------|------------------------------|---------------|
| 9 | Not applicable for this site | NA |

Other and Ill-Defined Digestive Organs

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other and Ill-Defined Digestive Organs

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other and Ill-Defined Digestive Organs

CS Mets at DX

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00 | No; none | NA | NONE | NONE |
| 10 | Distant lymph node(s), NOS | NA | D | D |
| 40 | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis | NA | D | D |
| 50 | (10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases | NA | D | D |
| 99 | Unknown if distant metastasis Cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record | NA | U | U |

Other and Ill-Defined Digestive Organs

CS Mets Eval

| Code | Description | Staging Basis |
|------|------------------------------|---------------|
| 9 | Not applicable for this site | NA |

Other and Ill-Defined Digestive Organs

CS Site-Specific Factor 1

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Other and Ill-Defined Digestive Organs

CS Site-Specific Factor 2

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Other and Ill-Defined Digestive Organs

CS Site-Specific Factor 3

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Other and Ill-Defined Digestive Organs

CS Site-Specific Factor 4

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Other and Ill-Defined Digestive Organs

CS Site-Specific Factor 5

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Other and Ill-Defined Digestive Organs

CS Site-Specific Factor 6

| Code | Description |
|------|------------------------------|
| 888 | Not applicable for this site |

Site-Specific Surgery Codes

Pancreas

C250–C259

(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)

Codes

00 None; **no surgery** of primary site; **autopsy ONLY**

25 **Local excision** of tumor, NOS

30 **Partial pancreatectomy**, NOS; example: distal

35 Local or partial pancreatectomy and duodenectomy

36 WITHOUT distal/partial gastrectomy

37 WITH partial gastrectomy (Whipple)

40 Total pancreatectomy

60 Total pancreatectomy and subtotal gastrectomy or duodenectomy

70 Extended pancreatoduodenectomy

80 Pancreatectomy, NOS

90 Surgery, NOS

99 **Unknown** if surgery performed; **death certificate ONLY**

Page left blank.

Site-Specific Surgery Codes

All Other Sites

C142–C148, C170–C179, C239, C240–C249, **C260–C269**, C300–C301, C310–C319, C339, C379, C380–C388, C390–C399, C480–C488, C510–C519, C529, C570–C579, C589, C600–C609, C630–C639, C680–C689, C690–C699, C740–C749, C750–C759

(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)

Codes

00 None; **no surgery** of primary site; **autopsy ONLY**

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS

- 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
- 13 Cryosurgery
- 14 Laser

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10–14

20 **Local tumor excision**, NOS

- 26 Polypectomy
- 27 Excisional biopsy

Any **combination** of **20** or **26–27** WITH

- 21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 22 Electrocautery
- 23 Cryosurgery
- 24 Laser ablation
- 25 Laser excision

[**SEER Note:** Codes 21 to 25 above combine 20 local tumor excision, 26 Polypectomy or 27 Excisional biopsy with 21 PDT, 22 Electrocautery, 23 Cryosurgery, 24 Laser ablation, or 25 Laser excision]

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20–27

30 Simple/partial surgical removal of primary site

40 **Total surgical removal** of primary site; enucleation

- 41 Total enucleation (for eye surgery only)

50 Surgery stated to be “**debulking**”

60 Radical surgery

Partial or total removal of the primary site WITH a resection in continuity (partial or total removal) with other organs

[**SEER Note:** In continuity with or “en bloc” means that all of the tissues were removed during the same procedure, but not necessarily in a single specimen]

90 Surgery, NOS

99 **Unknown** if surgery performed; **death certificate ONLY**

Page left blank